Key to Junior English for Tibetan Students

English-Tibetan Dictionary
Contents

Preface  <6>

Contributors  <7>

Names of People  <8>

Names of Places  <10>

Tibetan Translation of Grammar Terms  <11>

Students' Book 1A  <12>

Unit 1 Hello! What’s your name?  <13>

Unit 2 Nice to meet you!  <15>

Unit 3 Can you spell it?  <18>

Unit 4 Numbers in English  <20>

Unit 5 What's this in English?  <24>

Unit 6 How old is he?  <27>

Unit 7 Is this your pencil-box?  <30>

Unit 8 Mainly revision  <34>

Unit 9 The new students  <36>

Unit 10 Where is it?  <40>

Unit 11 Come and meet the family!  <42>

Unit 12 What can you see?  <45>

Unit 13 What colour is it?  <47>

Unit 14 That's mine  <49>

Unit 15 What's the time?  <51>

Unit 16 Mainly revision  <52>
Students' Book 1B

Unit 17 Could you help me, please? _BADTEXT_  <55>
Unit 18 Look after your things! _BADTEXT_  <57>
Unit 19 Food and drink _BADTEXT_  <59>
Unit 20 Playing games _BADTEXT_  <60>
Unit 21 What are you doing? _BADTEXT_  <63>
Unit 22 Let's go to school today! _BADTEXT_  <65>
Unit 23 Where are you from? _BADTEXT_  <67>
Unit 24 What do you like? _BADTEXT_  <68>
Unit 25 People and work _BADTEXT_  <71>
Unit 26 What time do you get up? _BADTEXT_  <73>
Unit 27 Shopping _BADTEXT_  <75>

Students' Book 2A

Unit 1 Welcome back! _BADTEXT_  <78>
Unit 2 How you get to school _BADTEXT_  <81>
Unit 3 Mid-Autumn Day _BADTEXT_  <83>
Unit 4 We're going to work on a farm _BADTEXT_  <85>
Unit 5 Working hard on the farm _BADTEXT_  <86>
Unit 6 Shall we go to the park? _BADTEXT_  <88>
Unit 7 Mainly revision _BADTEXT_  <90>
Unit 8 Where do you sit? _BADTEXT_  <92>
Unit 9 Find the right place _BADTEXT_  <94>
Unit 10 Home and Work _BADTEXT_  <96>
Unit 11 Keep healthy _BADTEXT_  <98>
Unit 12 Which is your favourite? इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <99>
Unit 13 Where were you born? इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <100>
Unit 14 Mainly revision इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <102>

Students' Book 2B इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा <103>

Unit 15 Thanks for the message इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <104>
Unit 16 The seasons of the year इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <105>
Unit 17 What's the weather like today? इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <108>
Unit 18 Come to the party! इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <112>
Unit 19 A weather report इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <115>
Unit 20 What do English people eat? इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <118>
Unit 21 Mainly revision इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <120>
Unit 22 What a good, kind girl इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <122>
Unit 23 You mustn't play on the road इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <124>
Unit 24 What do you have to do? इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <126>
Unit 25 The visit to Monkey Island इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <128>
Unit 26 A good doctor इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <130>
Unit 27 Ling Feng's diary इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <132>
Unit 28 Mainly revision इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <134>

Students' Book 3 इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा <136>

Unit 1 Teacher's Day इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <137>
Unit 2 The sports meeting इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <141>
Unit 3 A good teacher इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <145>
Unit 4 What were they doing? इठप्रग्यालोक्तीमा दुवैसहसमाणकीतिहित | <148>
Unit 5 The accident

Unit 6 In the library

Unit 7 Mainly revision

Unit 8 On the farm

Unit 9 A visit to a factory

Unit 10 Mr. Green's problem

Unit 11 A great inventor

Unit 12 Have a good time, Jim

Unit 13 Happy New Year

Unit 14 Mainly revision

Unit 15 At home with the twins

Unit 16 What's it made of?

Unit 17 What was it used for?

Unit 18 Planting trees

Unit 19 Mainly revision

Unit 20 The world's population

Unit 21 Shopping

Unit 22 At the doctor's

Unit 23 The football match

Unit 24 Mainly revision

English-Tibetan Dictionary
Preface

This book is an aid to Tibetan students who are learning English using the *Junior English for China* textbooks. It was prepared by six students in the English Training Program in the Nationalities Department of Qinghai Normal University.

The book is divided into sections that correspond to the current *Junior English for China* textbooks. Each unit in *Junior English for China* is given here with subsections on useful expressions, grammar, and text explanation.

Publication was made possible with generous support from the United Board for Higher Christian Education in Asia.
Contributors

English and Tibetan Editors

Robert
Matthew
Fred
James
Monica
Mick

English Editor

Kevin Stuart
### Names of People

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Name in Traditional Script</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ann Ann</td>
<td>Gunchu རུང་ཆུབ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caihua Caihua</td>
<td>Han Meimei རང་མེད་མེ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairang Cairang</td>
<td>Hangdi རང་དེ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cizhon Cizhon</td>
<td>Hangmu རང་མུ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cumu Cumu</td>
<td>Huamo རུམོ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Danba Mr Danba</td>
<td>Mr Hu རུམ་ཧུ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danden Danden</td>
<td>Huadan རུད་དན།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danzen Danzen</td>
<td>Hui Fang རུ་ལང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dawa Dawa</td>
<td>Jantso རུང་ནོ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debi Debi</td>
<td>Jim རུང་མི་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dodben Dodben</td>
<td>Kanzhu རུང་ཞུ་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doma Doma</td>
<td>Kate རུང་གི།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dondrup Dondrup</td>
<td>Lakers Team ལེནེ་ཤེས་དབྱིས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorji Dorji</td>
<td>Lhaben རུང་བོད་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorri Dorri</td>
<td>Lhamo རུང་མོ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drongker Drongker</td>
<td>Lhomotso རུང་མཐོ་སོ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drukar Drukar</td>
<td>Lily རུང་ལི།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duden Duden</td>
<td>Lin Tao རུང་ཐོ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dulu Dulu</td>
<td>Ling Feng རུང་ཕེན་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunba Dunba</td>
<td>Lodan རུང་ལྡན་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gangcu Gangcu</td>
<td>Losang རུང་བོས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganzi Ganzi</td>
<td>Lucy རུང་གི།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gensang Gensang</td>
<td>Meduk རུང་དུག་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gesar Gesar</td>
<td>Nima རུང་གི།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Green Mr Green</td>
<td>Norbu རུང་བུ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs. Green Mrs. Green</td>
<td>Nyingkar རུང་མཆོག་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nymka Nymka</td>
<td>Oncu རུང་མ་ཐང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peet Peet</td>
<td>Pencu རུང་ལུང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pete Pete</td>
<td>Polly རུང་ལའི་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qiechung Qiechung</td>
<td>Qiezhe རུང་གེ་ཝ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabji Rabji</td>
<td>Renchin རུང་ཅིང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sally Sally</td>
<td>Sambhota རུང་བོད་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonym Sonym</td>
<td>Tarlu རུང་ལྲུ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom Tom</td>
<td>Wang རུང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wei Hua Wei Hua</td>
<td>Yangjian རུང་འཇོ་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yangzom Yangzom</td>
<td>Yondan རུང་དན།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yongtso Yongtso</td>
<td>Yu Yang རུང་ཡང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhacai Zhacai</td>
<td>Zhaxi རུང་སྐྱེ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miss Zhao Miss Zhao</td>
<td>Zhaxi རུང་སྐྱེ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhamai Zhamai</td>
<td>Zhaxi Cairang རུང་སྐྱེ་ཞིང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of Places</td>
<td>Names of Places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amdo འམདོ</td>
<td>Malho Prefecture མལྷ་སྤེལ་བུ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America འメリ希</td>
<td>Malho Normal School མལྷ་སྤེལ་བུ་དོན་སྤུུ་མི་དུས</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia འוסྱྲི་ཐུབ</td>
<td>Maqin Mountain མགིནརྒྱུན་བུ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ayers Rock འདྲེས་རི་མགོ</td>
<td>Moscow ཡོ་སོ་མ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beijing བཱིམེང་</td>
<td>Nationalities Press མིང་རྣམ་སྤྱིའི་བུར།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain བིསྦེན་</td>
<td>Nepal སྤེལ་བུ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burma མབུ་རུ།</td>
<td>People's Park མཉེན་པོ་པར་དུ་དུ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada འམྭ</td>
<td>Qinghai སྤྱི་ཁུལ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Asia བསྒྲ་བའི་དབང་ཕྲག་</td>
<td>Qinghai Hotel སྤྱི་ཁུལ་བུ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamdo ལྟ་ སྐམདོ</td>
<td>Qinghai Lake སྤྱི་ཁུལ་བུ་དབུ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chengdu སྦྱྲ་</td>
<td>Qinghai Nationalities Institute སྤྱི་ཁུལ་སྲི་བུ་སྤུར་བུ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuzhou འཇུ་</td>
<td>Rebgong རེབོ་གོང་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dujia Village དོ་ཆི་ག</td>
<td>Shanghai སྣྙན་གཤེ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England ཁིི་</td>
<td>Sichuan སི་ཧུུ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gangcha County རང་ཆ</td>
<td>Tibet སྙ་དབབ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong ཉང་ཁང་</td>
<td>USA ཁིི་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hor གོར་</td>
<td>Xi'an རི་ཐུན་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huangzhong སྐྱུན་</td>
<td>Xiaqong Monastery རྗེབས་གཤེ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India མྱི་ཧྲྱུ</td>
<td>Xunhua ཐུན་ཧུུ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jiantsa Nationalities Middle School སོ་ཐུ་མི་དོན་སྤུུ་མི་དུས</td>
<td>Yak Hotel རླབས་གཤེ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kumbum Monastery རྒྱུན་མོ་བུ་མ།</td>
<td>Yellow River རྒྱུན་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lhabrang སྐོར་</td>
<td>Ziling སི་ྱིུ་</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lhasa City སྐད་པོ་སུམ་</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibetan Translation of Grammar Terms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active voice and passive voice དབུགས་པར་བོད།</td>
<td>Past perfect tense དུས་མཛད་ལེན་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective སེམས་པོ་ཚིགས།</td>
<td>Past simple བོད་པའི་ལེན་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answer form དོན་དང་བོད།</td>
<td>Plural forms གངས་པོ་ཚིགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articles ཞེས་ོན་ོད་པོ་ཚིགས།</td>
<td>Possessive pronouns དབང་ོན་ཚིགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of adverbs སོགས་ཀྱི་ཐོ་མོ་མི་་མ་</td>
<td>Possessives དབང་ོན་ཚིགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countable nouns ཤབ་སྐད་དཀར་མཁན།</td>
<td>Present དུས་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full forms ལོག་བོད།</td>
<td>Present continuous tense དུས་བོད་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future ལོ་བོད།</td>
<td>Present indefinite tense དུས་མ་བོད་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future in the future ལོ་སྦྱར་དང་བོད་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
<td>Present perfect tense དུས་མཛད་ལེན་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future simple ལོ་བོད།</td>
<td>Present simple དུས་བོད་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperatives རུང་ོན།</td>
<td>Pronoun རོ་ཅིགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive verbs རོ་ག་བོད་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
<td>Question form རོ་ཅིགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative and possessive cases རོ་ཅིགས་</td>
<td>Question form རོ་ཅིགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun རོ་ཅིགས།</td>
<td>Short forms རོ་ག་བོད་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object གོ་དབང་ལེན་པ།</td>
<td>Singular forms རོ་ཅིགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past བོད།</td>
<td>Statement form རོ་ག་བོད་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past continuous གོ་དབང་ལེན་པ།</td>
<td>Subject རོ་ཅིགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The present indefinite tense རོ་ག་བོད་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
<td>Time Expression རོ་བོད་པ་ཅིང་།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 1 Hello! What’s your name?

Useful Expressions

1. Good morning, Teacher. Good morning, students.
2. What’s your name? My name is...
3. How are you? Fine, thank you. And you? I’m fine, too.
4. Where are you from? I'm from Lhabrang.
5. When did you come? I came yesterday afternoon.

Text Explanation

1. What is your name? My name is... My name is...
   a. What is his name? His name is...
   b. What is her name? Her name is...
   c. What is my name? Your name is...
   d. What is your father's name? My father's name is...
   e. What's your brother's name? My brother's name is...

2. Nice to meet you! = How nice to meet (see) you.

3. Nice to meet you too! (བོད་ལ་མཐོ་རེད་“Nice to meet you!”མིན་ངོ་འབུ་དེ་བ་ཞིག་“Nice to meet you!”
   སོ་རིམ་འབྲུ་ལུགས་ལ་དེ་བ་ཞིག་“Nice to meet you!”)
4 This is Weihua. He is Weihua.

5 A: Good morning, Class! B: Good morning, Teacher! A: Sit down, please.

Unit 2 Nice to meet you!

Useful Expressions ཕེས་བཟོད་གིས་འབྲི་གི་བོད་ལྟར།

1 Nice to meet you!  བོད་ལྟར་བཟོད་བདེ་ཡོད། བོད་པར་བཟོད་བདེ་ཡོད།

2 I’m a herdsman.  དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་

3 Are you a farmer? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.  དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་བོད། བོད། བོད། དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་

4 What is your nationality? My nationality is Tibetan. / I'm Tibetan.  དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་བོད། བོད། བོད། དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་

5 Are you Tibetan? Yes, I'm Tibetan.  དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་བོད། བོད། བོད། དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་

Grammar དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་

"Be"- "is" "am" "are"- བོད་ལྟར་བཟོད་བདེ་ཡོད། བོད་ལྟར་བཟོད་བདེ་ཡོད།

1 Is བོད་ལྟར་བཟོད་ཐེགས་(he, she, it)

1a Is he a student? Yes, he is. / Yes, he's a student.  དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་རྒྱས། བོད། བོད། དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་

1b Is she Tibetan? No, she is American.  དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་མི་ཐོན། བོད། བོད། དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་

1c Is it a sheep? Yes, it is. / Yes, it's a sheep.  དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་རྒྱས། བོད། བོད། དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་

1d Is your name...? Yes, my name is... (My name is "it") དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་ལྟོ་འབ་"is" ཐོན་

2 Am བོད་ལྟར་བཟོད་"I"- བོད་ལྟར་བཟོད་

2a Am I beautiful? Yes, you're beautiful. / No, you are ugly.  བོད་ལྟར་བཟོད་མི་ཐོན། བོད་ལྟར་

2b Am I right? Yes, you are right. / No, you are wrong.  བོད་ལྟར་བཟོད་ཐོན། བོད་ལྟར་

2c Am I Kate? No, you are Pete.  བོད་ལྟར་བཟོད་ཐོན། བོད། བོད། དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་

2d Am I a good student? Yes, you are.  དཔའ་འཇིག་ཐེགས་བོད། བོད། བོད།
3 Are "you" a teacher? No, I'm a student.
1a Nice meeting you! I'm Kanzhu. Nice to meet you,
Cizhon. My name is Kanzhu. Nice to meet you, Cizhon.
Cizhon: Nice meeting you, Kanzhu.
2 Can you say the English letters? Yes, I can. Can you read this English text? Yes, I can.
2d Are these Tibetan letters? No, they are English letters.
3 Are you Losang? Yes, I am. / No, I’m Dawa. Are you a teacher? No, I’m a student.
Are you OK? Yes, I'm OK.
3c Are you OK? Yes, I'm OK.
3 Don’t forget "O" and "R." || "O"ཇླྭ"R"ཐུལ་བོད་ལེགས།

3a Don’t forget. གངས་འབོད་ལེགས།

3b Don't forget your mother language. གངས་ལོངས་པའི་སྲིད་སོགས།

3c Don't forget you're a student. གངས་པར་མི་བཞིན་ལས་མེད།

4 Turn to page two. དུས་དུས་བཤད་ཕྱིན་ཕྲིན།

4a Turn to --- ཤིན་ཏུ་ལེགས།

4b Please turn to me and speak loudly. དུས་དུས་བཤད་ཕྱིན་ཕྲིན་ཟིང་སྐོར།

4c Please turn to page thirty tree. དུས་དུས་བཤད་ཕྱིན་ཕྲིན།
Unit 3 Can you spell it?

Useful Expressions

1 Good afternoon! )&4$)*
   1a Good morning! )&4$)*
   1b Good evening! )&4$)*
   1c Good night! )&4$)*

2 Sorry. 3<)=4$)*

3 Oh, good! 3<)=4$)*

4 How do you do? 3<)=4$)*

5 Can you spell it, please? 3<)=4$)*

6 What is this in English? 3<)=4$)*

7 B-double O-K. || B-O 3<)=4$)*

8 Goodbye! 3<)=4$)*

Text Explanation

1 Good afternoon! )&4$)*
   1a Good morning! )&4$)*
   1b Good evening! )&4$)*
   1c Good night! )&4$)*

2 Sorry. = I'm sorry. 3<)=4$)*

3 It doesn't matter. 3<)=4$)*

4 A: Are you Dorji? 3<)=4$)*
   B: No, I'm not. 3<)=4$)*
   A: Sorry. 3<)=4$)*
   B: It doesn't matter. 3<)=4$)*

5 Excuse me! Are you Mr. Green? 3<)=4$)*
5a Excuse me! དགེ་བོད་སྣང་དུགས་ནི་ོམ་བཤད་ཤེས་གྱི་སྔོན་ལ་སྔོན་ནང་རྒྱུ་ (དོན་དབང་སྣང་དུགས་ནི་ོམ་བཤད་ཤེས་གྱི་སྔོན་ལ་སྔོན་ནང་རྒྱུ་)  དེ་ཡིང་བཤད་བྱུང་བ་ཕོ་བུ་བོད་ཀྱི་སྔོན་ལ་སྔོན་ནང་རྒྱུ་<br>
5b Excuse me, where is my pen? བོད་ཀྱི་སྔོན་ལ་སྔོན་ནང་རྒྱུ་<br>
5c Excuse me, I must go now. བོད་ཀྱི་སྔོན་ལ་སྔོན་ནང་རྒྱུ་<br>

6 How do you do! རོ་སྣོན་ ("How do you do!" རོ་སྣོན་"How do you do!"
6a Doma: Dulu, this is my friend, Zhaxi. Zhaxi, this is my younger brother, Dulu. དོད་ རོ་སྣོན་ བོད་ཀྱི་སྔོན་ལ་སྔོན་ནང་རྒྱུ་ དོད་ རོ་སྣོན་
Dulu: How do you do, Zhaxi? རོ་སྣོན་ རོ་སྣོན་
Zhaxi: How do you do, Dulu? རོ་སྣོན་

7 Can you spell it, please? རོ་སྣོན་ རོ་སྣོན་
7a Can you spell "sheep"? རོ་སྣོན་

8 in + language
8a What do you call this + in + language?
8b How do you say this + in + language?
8c A: What's this in English? རོ་སྣོན་
B: It's a desk. རོ་སྣོན་
A: What do you call this in English? རོ་སྣོན་
B: I call it "desk" in English. རོ་སྣོན་

9 B-double O-K. || B-Oདོདེ-K
9a S-H-double-E-P. || S-H-Eདོདེ-P
9b F-double-O-T. || F-Oདོདེ-T.
Unit 4 Numbers in English

Useful Expressions

1. Are you in row 3? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not in row 5.
2. Which grade are you in? I'm in grade 4.
3. What class are you in? I'm in class 3.
4. How old are you? I'm eleven.
5. Are you ten?
6. What's one and two? One and two is three.
7. Are you studying mathematics? No, I'm not studying mathematics. I'm studying English.
8. Where are you studying? I'm studying at Qinghai Nationalities Institute.

Text Explanation

1. Number
   1a Row 3, number 2.
   1b Bus No. (= number) 10.
   1c Room 101
   1d Lesson 8
   1e Page 139
   1f Student book 1
   1g Workbook 2
   1h Unit 4
   1i Number 2 Middle School.
2 A: Hello! B, how are you this morning? 
B: I'm fine. How about you? 
A: Couldn't be better. Why are you so early this morning?
B: Because my family found an apartment at our school. So it became more convenient for me to go to class so I won't be late any more.
A: That's good. Excuse me, may I have your family's apartment number?
B: Sure. My family's apartment number is 302.
A: Thank you very much.
B: You're welcome.

3 How old are you? I'm ten.
A: How old is he?
B: He is nine.
A: How old is she?
B: She is ten years old.
A: How old am I?
B: I don't know.
A: Can you guess?
B: I think you are eleven years old.
A: No, I'm older than that. Would you like to try again?
B: Yes, I'd like to try again. Are you thirteen years old?  འི་ཐེན་རྫོིང་བྱེད་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8  འི་ཐེན་རྫོིང་བྱེད་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
A: Yes, you're right. I'm thirteen years old.  བི་ཐེན་ཐོ་མཛོད་པར་བཙོ། བི་ཐེན་རྫོིང་བྱེད་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8

4 Polly, what's one and two? = How much is one and two? = How much is one plus (+) one?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་བཅིག་བསྡུ་བཟོ།
4a One and two is three.  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
4b What's five and four? What is five plus four? Nine. (Five and four is nine).  རེ་ཐོ་
   རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
4c What is eight minus two?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8 Eight minus two is / equals six.
4d What is three times five?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8 Three times five is fifteen.
4e What is nine divided by three?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8 Nine divided by three is three.

5 Ah, it's a secret!  ལྷོ་ཐོ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8

6 What class are you in?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8 I'm in class 1.  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
6a What grade are you in?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8 I'm in grade 3.  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
6b What row are you in?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8 I'm in row 5.  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
6c Zhaxi: Hello! Dorji, how are you?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
   Dorji: I'm fine, and you?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
   Zhaxi: I'm fine too. Excuse me, does your family have any livestock (yaks, sheep, horses, donkeys, goats, and mules)?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
   རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8 རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
   རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
Dorji: Yes, my family does.  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
Zhaxi: How many yaks does your family have?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
Dorji: My family has forty two yaks.  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
Zhaxi: How many sheep does your family have?  རེ་ཐོ་འི་བཅིག་དགེ་པ་ནི་ཐེན་8
Dorji: My family has two hundred and sixty five sheep.

Zhaxi: Thank you for telling me about your family’s livestock numbers.

Dorji: You’re welcome.

7 Dorji has two older brothers and his father would like to divide his sheep and yaks among his three sons.

7a How many sheep will Dorji have?
7b What is one hundred sixty five divided by three?
7c How many yaks will Dorji have?
7d What is forty two divided by three?
### Grammar

- "be" is used to indicate existence or identity.

### The verb BE "be"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Be</th>
<th>Question:</th>
<th>Answer:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Be + Pronoun + Noun)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am</td>
<td>Am I tall?</td>
<td>Yes, you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Am I fat?</td>
<td>*Yes, you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Am I fast?</td>
<td>No, you are not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>Are you a teacher?</td>
<td>No, I am not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are you in Row 3?</td>
<td>Yes, I am.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Yes, you are." "Yes, you're tall." "Yes, you're a student." "Yes, I'm in Row 3." "Yes, I’m a teacher." "Yes, I’m in Row 3."

"Yes, you're." "Yes, you are." "Yes, you're a student." "Yes, I'm in Row 3." "Yes, I’m in Row 3." "Yes, I’m not a teacher." "Yes, I’m not. I’m 14."
Unit 5 What's this in English?

Useful Expressions

1. What's this (in English)?
   It's a clock / pencil-box / cup.
   "clock"/ "pencil-box"/ "cup"

2. Is this a pen?
   Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.
   "pen"

3. It's a banana / an apple / an egg / an orange.
   "banana"/ "apple"/ "egg"/ "orange"

4. What's that?
   "that"

5. Is that a bike / a car / a bus?
   "bike"/ "car"/ "bus"

Grammar

"This"/ "that"/ "it"/ "he"/ "she"/ "they"/ "we"/ "you"

Using this, that and it:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question form</th>
<th>Answer form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This นี่</td>
<td>What is this?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What’s this?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is this a Tibetan robe?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Who is this?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is this your older sister?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That นั้น</td>
<td>Who is that?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is that a sheep?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What’s that?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Text Explanation

1A What's this in English?

This... นี่...

1a This is a chair. นี่นี่
1b This is a pencil. འབྲི་ཐོག་ཟུལ། འེན།
1c This is a bowl. འབྲི་ཐོག་གཅིག་ཟུལ།

1B What's this in English? འབྲི་ཐོག་བོད་སྐད་ཡིག་ཟུལ།
1d It's a clock. འདོད་"clock"ཟུལ།
1e It's a dog / horse. འཛིན་ / ཤིག་ཟུལ། (It's = it is.)
1f What's this? འབྲི་ཐོག་ཟུལ། It's a map. འབྲི་ཐོག་སྤྱོོན་ཟུལ།

2 And what's this? འབྲི་ཐོག་ཟུལ།
2a And. . . བ་ཅིང་"ཐམས་ཅད་དག་ནི་"ཟུལ།
2b This is a pen. And this is a pencil. འབྲི་ཐོག་སྐད་ཡིག་ཟུལ། འབྲི་ཐོག་སྐད་ཡིག་ཟུལ།
2c This is a book. And this is a notebook. འབྲི་བོད་སྐད་ཅིག་ཟུལ། འབྲི་བོད་སྐད་ཅིག་ཟུལ།

3 A: Is this a pen? འབྲི་ཐོག་སྐད་ཅིག་ཟུལ།
   B: Yes, it is. འདོད། འདོད།
   A: Is that a desk? འབྲི་མཚན་ཟུལ།
   B: Yes, it is a desk. འདོད། འབྲི་མཚན་ཟུལ།

4 What's that in English? འབྲི་ཐོག་སྐད་ཡིག་ཟུལ།
4a . . . that. . . གཉིས་ཟུལ།
4b Is that a goat? No, it isn't. It is a sheep. འབྲི་མཚན་ཟུལ། འདོད། འབྲི་ཐོག་ཚན་ཟུལ།
4c This is my book. That is your book. འབྲི་ཐོག་སྐད་ཅིག་ཟུལ། འབྲི་ཐོག་ཚན་ཟུལ།

5 Look! That's a car. རྡོ་རྗེས། འབྲི་ཐོག་ཐུབ་ཙམ་ཁྲིམས་ཟུལ། Yes, it is a Japanese car. འདོད། འདོད། འབྲི་ཐོག་བོད་སྐད་ཡིག་མེ་ཏོག་མེ་ཏོག་ཡིག་གཟིགས་ཟུལ།
5a Look! That's a horse. རྡོ་རྗེས། འབྲི་ཐོག་ཚན་ཟུལ།
5b Look! That's my family tent. རྡོ་རྗེས། འབྲི་ཐོག་ཁྲིམས་གཟིགས་ཟུལ།

6 Is that an English car? འབྲི་ཐོག་ཐུབ་ཙམ་ཁྲིམས་ཟུལ།
6a Is that your village? འབྲི་ཐོག་ཆི་བོད་པ་ཟུལ།
6b Is that your horse? འབྲི་ཐོག་ཚན་ཟུལ།
Grammar ངན་འགན་བཞིན།

English…adjective རོ་བོ་ཤེས་ཐོས་

1 Is that a black car? Yes, it is. མགྲོ་བཅུང་བཞིན་དེ་དུ་དེ་དུ་དེ

1a Is that a red hat? No, it isn't. It's a white hat. མགྲོ་མི་ཐ་ན་ཐོས་མེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ

1b Is that a dog? No, it isn't. It is a wolf. མགྲོ་ཐོག་མེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ

2 English, Chinese, Japanese, American, Tibetan ཆི་མ་ཚ་ཐོང་ཕུ་བུ་ཆི་ཚ་ཐོང་ཕུ་ཆི་ཚ་ཐོང་ཕུ་ཆི་ཚ་ཐོང་ཕུ་ཆི

2a He is English. ཆི་མ་ཚ་ཐོང་ཕུ་ཆི

2b He is an Englishman. ཆི་མ་ཚ་ཐོང་ཕུ་ཆི

2c She is Japanese. ཆི་མ་ཚ་ཐོང་ཕུ

2d She is a Japanese girl. ཆི་མ་ཚ་ཐོང་ཕུ
Unit 6 How old is he?

Useful Expressions

1 Who is this / that? This / That is... ฉัน / ฉันคือเพื่อน / เธอ / เขา...]
   1a Who’s that in picture 1? นี่คือปฏิทินีที่ฉันเห็น]
   1b Who is my friend? Is your friend a boy or a girl? ฉันมีเพื่อนรัก... เขาเป็นชายหรือหญิง]

2 How old is he / she? He / She is... ฉัน / ฉันมีเพื่อน / เธอ / เธอ...]
   2a I think he’s very old. ฉันคิดว่าเขา стар.

3 What’s his / her / its name? ฉัน / เธอ / เขาคือใคร]
   3a This is a bird. Its name is... ฉัน / เธอ / เขาเป็นนก / เขาชื่อ]
      Its... "ฉัน / เขา"แทยนิยมในภาษาต่างประเทศ]
      It is / it's... "ฉัน / เขา"
   3b Its tail is long. ฉัน / เขาตี๋ยาว]
   3c It's mine. ฉัน / เขาเป็นของฉัน]

4 Is she / he at school? I don’t know. ฉัน / เธอไม่รู้]
   4a Is everyone here today? ฉัน / เขารู้จักกันทุกคน]
   4b Is your brother at home? No, he left for Xining yesterday morning. ฉัน / เเขาน้อง]
      เขาไปพักที่นิง][

5 Yes, that’s right! ฉัน / เขาคือปฏิทินีที่ฉันเห็น]
   5a Today is Monday, right? ฉัน / เขาใช้เป็นวันจันทร์]
   5b Tomorrow is her birthday, right? ฉัน / เขาใช้เป็นวันเกิด]
      No, that’s wrong. ฉัน / เขาใช้เป็นวัน]]
Grammar ༡༠༡ backdrop

1 Using he, she, and it. "He/she, it"་ཁྱབ་བྱུང་བ།

1a How old is he / she / it? He / She / It is 13. འན/ཞེས/ནི "it"ལས་ལ་བརྟེན་དུ་བྱ་

1b It's very fat / tall / big. (The yak is very fat. The tree is very tall. The house is very
big.) འན/ཞེས/ནི "it"ལས་ལ་བརྟེན་དུ་

1c Is he / she / at home? Yes, he / she is at home. འན/ཞེས/ནི "it"ལས་ལ་བརྟེན་

1d Is he / she a student? No, he / she is a teacher. འན/ཞེས/ནི "it"ལས་ལ་བརྟེན་

1e Is it an eagle? Yes, it is. No, it is a vulture. འན/ཞེས/ནི "it"ལས་ལ་བརྟེན་

Text Explanation ཀུན་ཁོར་འབྲེལ་ཐོས།

1 Who is this? Who are you? འཐོས་གཤིས། འཐོས་གཤིས།

1a Who is that? Who is he / she? འཐོས་གཤིས། འཐོས་གཤིས།

1b A: Who are you? འཐོས་གཤིས།

B: I am Rabji. I am a student. འཐོས་གཤིས། འཐོས་གཤིས།

1c A: Who is he? འཐོས་གཤིས།

B: He is my younger brother. His name is Dorji and he is a student, too. འཐོས་གཤིས།

1d Who is your best friend? འཐོས་གཤིས། འཐོས་གཤིས།

1e Who is your English teacher? འཐོས་གཤིས། འཐོས་གཤིས།
2 I don’t know. ལ་ལེགས།
2a Do you know the answer? གི། བོ་བད་དེ་ལེགས།
    Yes, I do. / No, I don’t know. བོ་བད་/ མེ་ལེགས།
2b Do you understand? གི། བོ་བད་དེ་ལེགས།
    Yes, I understand. / No, I don’t understand. བོ་བད་ / མེ་ལེགས།
3 I think she’s twenty. དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ལེགས།
3a I think . . . དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ /
3b I think he is in the classroom. དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ལེགས།
4 In picture . . . དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ /
4a Who are they in picture 2? དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ལེགས།
4b Who’s that in picture 1? དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ལེགས།
5 In . . . དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ /
5a Is everyone here today? དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ལེགས།
    Yes, everyone is here. བོ་བཅོས།
5b Is Bill in, Sam? || བོ་/ བོ་/ བོ་/ བོ་/ བོ་/ བོ་ / བོ་/ བོ་ /
5c Is your father in? No, he is out. བོ་/ བོ་ / བོ་/ བོ /
6 At school . . . དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ /
6a Is she at school today? Yes, she is. དཔེ་བོ་བཅོས་ལེགས། བོ /
6b Is your brother at home? Yes, he is at home. བོ /
7 Is your friend a boy or a girl? བོ /
7a Is that your household's cow or my household's cow? That is my family's cow.
Unit 7 Is this your pencil-box?

Useful Expressions

1. Is this your / my / his / her pencil-box? Yes, it is. / No, it isn’t. यदि यह तुमकी / मेरी / उसकी / उसकी कागजातीय बाजू है, तो अज्ञात होगा।
2. Here you are. यहां है।
3. Where’s my cup? वहां मेरी चाय की कप कहां है?
4. What are these / those? They’re boats / yaks. इसे / उसे जहाज / गोबरे।
5. Are these / those / they English books? Yes, they are. / No, they aren’t. ये / उसे / वह अंग्रेजी बुकें हैं? जाने।
6. They’re their books. वह उनकी बुकें।
7. That's all right. इसके साथ चिंता नहीं।
8. Numbers: one, two, three, four, five. . . अंक: एक, दो, तीन, चार, पाँच . . .

Grammar

1. Using "my, your, his, her and its." "My / your, his, her, its" अपनी अपनी रूपमाला
   1a Is this your scarf? Yes, it is. / No, it isn't. यदि यह तुमकी चौड़ी चौड़ी बाजू है, तो अज्ञात होगा।
   1b Is this his scarf? Yes, it is. / No, it isn't. यदि यह उसकी चौड़ी चौड़ी बाजू है, तो अज्ञात होगा।
   1c Is this her scarf? Yes, it is. / No, it isn't. यदि यह उसकी चौड़ी चौड़ी बाजू है, तो अज्ञात होगा।
   1d Whose Tibetan robe is this? It's my Tibetan robe. यदि यह तुमकी गोटरी बाजू है, तो अज्ञात होगा।

2. Number and plural forms of nouns अंकों और सौदियों का विशेषज्ञता
   2a There is a student in the classroom. स्कूल कक्ष में एक छात्र है।
   2b There are thirty students in the classroom. स्कूल कक्ष में तीirty छात्र हैं।
   2c There is only one apple on the tree. पेड़ में एकल एक आसपास है।
   2d There are ten apples on the tree. पेड़ में दस आसपास है।
2b One apple བུད་སྐོོད།
Two apples བུད་སྐོོད།
One hundred འཁུགས་།

3 Using "these, those," and "they." || "These"ཉིད་"those, they"ཉིད་བོད། བོད།
"These"བོད་པའི་དགེ་བོའི་རྒྱུན་ཐོབ་བཤད། བོད།
"Those"བོད་པའི་དགེ་བོའི་རྒྱུན་ཐོབ་བཤད། བོད།
"They"ཉིད་ / ཉིད་

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question form རྟེན་ཅིང་།</th>
<th>Answer form རྟེན་ཅིང་།</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| These འཇོག  | What are these?  
Are these pears? | They are icons.  
No, they are apples. |
| Those འཇོག  | Are those mules?  
What are those? | Yes, they are.  
They are Tibetan tents |

This འཇོག  these འཇོག  
That འཇོག  those འཇོག  

Text Explanation རྟེན་བརྟེན་བོད། བོད།
1 Here you are! རྟེན་བཅོས་པའི་དུས།

2 A: May I borrow your eraser? རྟེན་བཅོས་པའི་དུས་ལུགས་|
B: Of course, here it is. རོ་རྩོམ། འཇོག  

2a A: Excuse me! Is this your book? རྟེན་གྱི་ཐབས་བོད། འཇོག་ཐབས་དཔེ་ཞིག  
B: Yes, it is. གེ་ འཇོག  
A: Here you are. གེ་བོད།
B: Thank you. གོད་དུས།
A: You're welcome. གོད་དུས་དབུན་ཞིག་
3 Answers for "Thank you." || "Thank you"

5a That’s all right. དབང་བོན། དབང་བོན།
5b That’s OK. བོད་སོགས།
5c Not at all. དབེན་བོད་དོན། དབེན་བོད་དོན།
5d You’re welcome. བོད་སོགས། བོད་སོགས།
5e It’s my pleasure. དབེན་བོད་དོན།

4 Where is my cup? དབེན་བོད་དོན།

4a A: Where is my hat? Is that my hat? དབེན་ཆགས་པ་དོན། དབེན་ཆགས་པ་དོན།
   B: No, I think it’s his hat. འཛིན། དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   A: Dorji, is this your hat? བོད་སོགས། དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   C: Oh, yes, it is. འཛིན། དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   A: Here you are. དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   C: Thank you. དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   A: You’re welcome. དབེན་བོད་དོན།

5 What are these? དབེན་བོད་དོན།

5a What are these? These are goats. They are bananas. They are mules. They are cows. དབེན་བོད་དོན། དབེན་བོད་དོན། དབེན་བོད་དོན། དབེན་བོད་དོན།

6 A: It’s very good! དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   B: Thank you. དབེན་བོད་དོན།

6a A: Excuse me! Is this your Tibetan robe? དབེན་བོད་དོན། དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   B: Yes, it is. འཛིན། དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   A: It’s very nice! དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   B: Thank you. དབེན་བོད་དོན།

7 A: Are these English books? དབེན་བོད་དོན། དབེན་བོད་དོན།
   B: Yes, they are. འཛིན། དབེན་བོད་དོན།

7a A: Are they your parents in this picture? དབེན་བོད་དོན། དབེན་བོད་དོན།
B: Yes, they are.  
A: Are they farmers?  
B: No, they are herdsmen.  

7b A: Excuse me!  
B: Yes?  
A: Is this your jacket?  
B: Yes, it is.  
A: Here you are.  
B: Thanks.  
A: That's OK.  

8 Look at the picture and listen to the tape.  

8a Please, look at page 32.  
8b Look at the cute boy.  
8c Listen to your teacher, please!  
8d Listen to the radio, please!  

9 Answer this question:  
9a What number is Jim’s bus?  
Jim's bus number is 12. / It's 12.  

10 "Ask" and "Answer"  
11a May I ask you a question, please?  
11b May I know your name, please?  
11c Can you answer my question, please?
Unit 8 Mainly revision

Useful Expressions

1 In pairs, ask and answer. Ask what the other students are playing. Ask what the teacher is doing now.

2 Next number. What’s the next number? 45.

3 Say the numbers: 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10. What’s the next number? 11.

4 What would you like to drink? I would like to drink a cup of milk tea.

5 How is the weather today? Sunny today.

Text Explanation

1 In pairs, ask and answer. Ask what the other students are doing. Ask what the teacher is doing now.

1a In pairs, read and write. Ask what the other students are doing. Ask what the teacher is doing now.

2 "Too" and "either" || "Too" & "either" "too" bangla "either" "eather" "either" "eather"

2a I’m a student. He is a student, too.

2b You don’t know the answer. I don’t know, either.

3 Play the game "Next Number!" "Next Number!" "Next Number!"

3a Play basketball. Play basketball.

3b Play football. Play football.
4 Count like this: one, two, three, four. . . วดิษฐีวดิษฐีวดิษฐีวดิษฐี. . . วดิษฐีวดิษฐี. . . วดิษฐี. . .

... like this วดิษฐี. . . |

4a Please, write it like this. วดิษฐีวดิษฐี

4b Read it like this, please. วดิษฐีวดิษฐี

5 Listen to the tape and answer these questions in your workbook. ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

5a Please, listen to me and write down my questions in your notebook. ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

6 Can I see your license, please? ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

6a Can I see your pictures? ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

6b Can you jump out the window? ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

7 What grade is he in? ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

7a What class are you in? ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

7b What row is he in? ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

7c What team is he on? ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

7d He is on the Lakers team. ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

8 It is the No. 14 Middle School. ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

8a It’s the No. 2 bus. ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

9 At school I have a friend. ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

9a At home I have a cat. ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ

9b At school I have many books. ทรงบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบบ
Unit 9 The new students

Useful Expressions

1. Are we all here?  སོགས་པ་བདེ་སྐྱོང་པ་?
2. They aren’t here.  ཡེད་པར་ན།
3. Put our coats here.  བདེ་གཅིག་འདུག་བསྐུར་ན།
4. Who is on duty today?  རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན།
5. Look after them.  རྣམ་པ་ལོག་གཅིག་བསྐྱར་ན།
6. This way please!  འཕྲུག་ཐོག་མ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱོང་
7. Nice to meet you!  འཕྲུག་ཐོག་མ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱོང་

Text Explanation

1. Who’s on duty today?  རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན།
   on duty... རྣམ་པ།
   1a Zhaxi is on duty today.  དེ་ཐེག་པས་ཐོག་མ་སྐྱེད་སྐྱོང་
   1b They are on duty today.  དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་
   1c We are all on duty today.  དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་

2. Are we all here? = Is everyone here today?  སོགས་པ་བདེ་སྐྱོང་པ་= རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན།
   2a Are they all students?  རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན།
   2b Are they all Tibetan monks? Yes, they are. / No, some of them are American
      monks.  རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན། རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན། / རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན།

3. Who isn’t at school today?  སོགས་པ་བདེ་སྐྱོང་པ་?
   3a Who isn’t here today?  སོགས་པ་བདེ་སྐྱོང་པ་?

4. Where are they?  རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན།
   4a I don’t know. They aren’t here.  ཡེད་པར་ན། ཡེད་པར་ན།
   4b I think they are at home.  རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན། རྣམ་པ་ལོག་སྤྱི་ལེན།

36
5 Where is he / she? ๐ / ฤๅถือว่า

5a I think he is in the classroom. ฤๅถือว่าเขายังอยู่ในห้องเรียน
5b I think she is American. ฤๅถือว่าเธอเป็นอเมริกัน

6 Today we have two new students. ฤๅถือว่าเราได้นักเรียนใหม่สองคน

6a We have. . . ค่ะ. . .
6b New student. ฤๅถือว่านักเรียนใหม่
6c I have two pencils. ฤๅถือว่าฉันมีปากกาสองด้าม
6d Today I have a new hat. ฤๅถือว่าฉันได้หมวกใหม่

7 Their names are Lucy and Lily. ในภาษาอื่นๆก็คือนักเรียนใหม่

7a Their hats are new. ฤๅถือว่าหมวกใหม่
7b Three and eight are their numbers. ฤๅถือว่าสามและแปดเป็นเลขของพวกเขา

8 We’re twins! ฤๅถือว่าคู่แฝด

9 OK. Please sit down over there. ฤๅถือว่ามันอยู่ตรงข้าม

9a He is over there. ฤๅถือว่าเขาอยู่ตรงข้าม
9b Can you see the cow over there? ฤๅถือว่าคุณเห็นคowsitting over there?

10 Sorry! You look the same! ฤๅถือว่าคุณเหมือนกัน

Look the same. . . ด้วย

10c Your pen and his pen look the same. ฤๅถือว่าปากกาของคุณและปากกาของเขาเหมือนกัน
10d The girls over there look the same. ฤๅถือว่าผู้หญิงคนสองคนดูเหมือนกัน

11 Han Meimei, please look after the twins today. ฤๅถือว่าคุณต้องดูแลลูกคู่แฝด

Look after. . . ดูแล
11b Please look after my car.

Grammar

1 Plural forms of the verb "BE." बी "व्यक्तिगत वो गर्ने" गर्ने

1a Are you / they in class 3? Yes, we / they are. ऐस नीस्ता क्लास 3मा छो / त्यो छो / मै / तिए मै / तिए

1b Are you / they twins? Yes, we / they are. ऐस नीस्ता मकरस्ता छो / त्यो मकरस्ता छो / मै / तिए मै / तिए

1c What grade are you / they in? We/ They / are in grade one. ऐस नीस्ता बोग्रेड र त्यो बोग्रेड / मै / तिए बोग्रेड र तिए बोग्रेड / मै / तिए बोग्रेड र तिए बोग्रेड

1d Are you American? No, I'm French. ऐस नीस्ता अमेरिकन छो / त्यो फ्रेंच / मै / तिए फ्रेंच / मै / तिए फ्रेंच
## Possessive Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular forms</th>
<th>Plural forms</th>
<th>Nominative and possessive cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am Zhaxi.</td>
<td>We have horses.</td>
<td>I possess my ________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My name is Zhaxi.</td>
<td>Our horses are white.</td>
<td>________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are Zhaxi.</td>
<td>You have hats.</td>
<td>You possess your ________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your name is Zhaxi.</td>
<td>Your hats are red.</td>
<td>________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She is Doma.</td>
<td>She has cats.</td>
<td>She possess her ________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her name is Doma.</td>
<td>Her cats are brown.</td>
<td>________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He is Zhaxi.</td>
<td>He has cats.</td>
<td>He possess his ________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His name is Zhaxi.</td>
<td>His cats are white</td>
<td>________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is Polly.</td>
<td>It has toys.</td>
<td>It possess its ________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Its name is Polly.</td>
<td>Its toys are red.</td>
<td>________-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We possess our ________-</td>
<td>- ________-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They possess their ________-</td>
<td>- ________-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 10 Where is it?

Useful Expressions คุณมีภาษาอังกฤษใช่ไหม
1 Who's that? คุณคือใคร?
2 Is it...or...? นี่คือ...หรือ...
3 Who are they? คุณคือใคร?
4 Look at the picture. ดูภาพนี้
5 Who are on duty today? They are on duty today. ใครอยู่หน้าทุกวัน?
6 Can you see...? Yes, I can. / No, I can't. คุณเห็น...ใช่ไหม? ใช่ / ไม่ใช่
7 Where are Lucy's pencils? ปากกาของลูซี่อยู่ที่ไหน?
8 It looks like a cat. นี่เป็นแมว
9 Put them over there, please. ให้ไว้ที่นั่น
10 Where is his family tent? His family tent is at the foot of Maqin Mountain.

Grammar คุณมีภาษาอังกฤษใช่ไหม
Using "the." || "The" ซึ่งมีอยู่ในประโยค
1) คุณมีภาษาอังกฤษใช่ไหม?
   1a Singular noun: the sun, the moon
2) คุณมีภาษาอังกฤษใช่ไหม?
   2a I have a cat. The cat likes meat.
   2b I can see a football? Where is the football?
Text Explanation

1 Who's that? जो युवक है?
   a Who is that man? That is my older brother. युवक है? वह मेरा बड़ा भाई है।
   b Who is the girl in the hat? चोए की महिला है? वह मेरी पत्नी है।
   c The boy in the yellow jacket is tall. महाराज की तलवार अधिक ऊँची है।

2 Are the twins in different classes? दो जियोइन की अलग आयुष्य क्लास है?
   a Are you guys in different classes? आपने दो जियोइन की अलग आयुष्य क्लास है?

3 This is a picture of my classroom. यह मेरी स्कूल कक्षा का फोटो है।
   a What is this? यह क्या है?

4 Look at the picture. यह फोटो है?
   a Look at the yak over there. वह गोबरदार का दूसरा गोबर है?

5 Can you see the door? Can you see a door? दरवाजा देख सकते है? दरवाजा देख सकते है?
   a A: Can you see the eraser? आप देख सकते हैं? ब: मतलब है?
      A: Where is it? इसका स्थान कहते?
      B: It's on the teacher's desk. वह शिक्षक के बर्तन पर है।

6 It looks like a cat! यह एक बिल्ली दिखाता है?
   a Your older brother looks like you. तुम्हारा बड़ा भाई तुम्हारे बुद्धिमत्ता है?
   b This hat looks like my hat. यह रानी तुम्हारे दुल्हन का भाई है?

7 Where is your home? तुमकी घर कहाँ है?
   My home is in Hor Village, Cuzhou Township, Jiantsa County, Malho Prefecture, Qinghai Province. मेरा घर होर गांव, तुम्हारे तहसील, जांटा जिल्ला, माल्हो ज़िल्ला, झिंझिंझ राज्य, झिंझिंझ राज्य।
Unit 11 Come and meet the family!

Useful Expressions

1 Come and meet my family. 来见见我的家人。
2 What's the name of her cat? 她的猫叫什么名字?
3 Who're they? They're my grandparents. 他们是谁？他们是我的祖父母。
4 Go and see. 去看看。
5 Nice to meet / see you. 很高兴见到/见到你。
6 Please come in. 请进。

Grammar

1 Possessives

1) "Zhaxi's" झाकैस, "s" का गोल रूप होता है "Zhaxi's" झाकैस्सा। कैसे?

1a Who is that (man)? He is Zhaxi's father. 谁是那个人？他是Zhaxi的父亲。

1b Is this your pen? No, it's Cairang's pen. 这是你的钢笔吗？不，这是Cairang的钢笔。

1c Is that Doma's cat? No, it's Drukar's cat. 那是Doma的猫吗？不，那是Drukar的猫。

1d My sisters' children. 我姐妹的孩子。

2 Imperatives

2a Go and see! 去看看！

2b May I come in? Come in, please. / Please come in. 我可以进来吗？请进。

2c Come and meet the family. 来见见我的家人。

2d Please, be careful. 请小心。

2e Sit down, please. 请坐下。

2f Be quiet, please. 请安静。
2g Let me try. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་ནི་དུས།
2h Let's go together. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་ནི་དུས།

Text Explanation འབུམ་བཞི་ནི་དུས།
1 Come and meet my family. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་ནི་སྣང་བཞི་ནི་སྤུར་བ་རེད།
   1a Come here and have a seat. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་ནི་འཚོལ་བུ།
2 What's that? ཐོན་ཏོག་ནི་འགྲུག་པ། It's a picture of my family. ཐོན་ཏོག་ནི་བཐུགས་པོ་བཞི་ནི་ལོག་པོ།
3 Oh, can I see it? ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་འགྲུག་པས་ཁུངས།
   3a May I have a look? ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་ཁུངས།
4 Nice to meet you! ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་ནི་གླེགས་པ།
   4a Nice to see you! ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་གླེགས་པ།
   4b Glad to see you. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་བཀོད་པ།
5 Please come in. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་འཚོལ་བ།
   5a May I come in? ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་འཚོལ་བ་ཁུངས། Come in, please. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་འཚོལ་བ།
6 Sit down and have a cup of tea with me. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་གངས་དང་ངོ་བོ་གཉེན་པོ་བཞི་ཞེས་རུ།
   6a Sit down and have a conversation with me. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་གངས་དང་ཁུངས།
   6b Come here and have an apple. ཐོན་ཏོག་བཞི་གངས་པོ་བཞི་ཞེས་རུ།
Conversation

Dorji: Hello! 🌟

Doma: Hello! Who's that? 🎉

Dorji: I'm one of Zhaxi's classmates and my name is Dorji. Are you Zhaxi's mother? 🎀

Doma: No, I'm Zhaxi's older sister. 🎀

Dorji: Oh, sorry. May I speak to Zhaxi, please? 🎀

Doma: Sure. He's riding a bicycle in the yard. I'll call him. 🎀

Zhaxi: Hi, Dorji. I'm sorry. My father bought me a new bicycle and I was riding it in my house yard. How is everything going with you? 🎀

Dorji: Not bad, but my parents have gone to my uncle's home and won't come back tonight. I feel a little alone. Will you be free this evening? 🎀

Zhaxi: I'm free except having a little homework to do. 🎀

Dorji: Then how about you bringing your homework to my home and we will do it. 🎀

Zhaxi: When will I come? 🎀

Dorji: It's up to you. 🎀

Zhaxi: What about seven thirty? 🎀

Dorji: OK. See you soon! Bye! 🎀

Zhaxi: See you soon! Bye! 🎀
Unit 12 What can you see?

Useful Expressions

1 What can you see in the picture? 🌟
2 I can't find... 😞
3 It's your turn now. 🤔

Grammar

1 Using "the" and "a". || "The"/"a"ལ་འག་ལ་

A: I have a storybook. 📚
     I have the storybook. 📚

B: Where is the pen / the book / the watch / the eraser? 🎨

A: It's on the teacher's desk 📚

1c some pictures / the pictures 📷

B: Where are the birds? 🦅

A: They are in the tree. 🌳

Text Explanation

1 What can you see in the picture? 🌟

A: What can you see in the tent? 🌸

B: I can see a slingshot. 🎯

A: Where is the slingshot? 🎯

B: It's on the bed. 🪴
2 I can see some flowers. ཐམས་བཟོ་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་

...on the tree ནོར་ལོངས་ནས་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་

the tree ནོར་ལོངས་ནས་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་

2a A: What can you see in the garden? མིང་དོན་དུ་འཛིན་་བཞི་

B: I can see some trees. མིང་དོན་དུ་འཛིན་་བཞི་

A: What can you see on the trees? འཛིན་ཐོན་ཐོན་ངེས་བཞི་

B: I can see some red apples. མིང་དོན་དུ་འཛིན་་བཞི་

2b What can you see in the tree? འཛིན་ཐོན་ཐོན་ངེས་བཞི་

I can see some birds in the tree. མིང་དོན་དུ་འཛིན་་བཞི་

3 I can't find the broom. Can you see it? ང་འབ་སྡེབས་པའི་ཐོན་ འཛིན་ཐོན་མོ་བཞི་

3a A: Excuse me, Lodan. I can't find the mop. Can you see it? རུ་པོ་དུ་འོད་ མིང་དོན་

B: I'm sorry, I can't. Is it behind the door? མིང་དོན་དུ་འོད་ མིང་དོན་དུ་འོད་

A: No, it isn't. ཞེས་ཏོ་དུ་འོད་པོ་སྲོད་

B: Er, is it under the bed? མིང་དོན་དུ་འོད་པོ་སྲོད་

A: Yes, you're right. Thank you. ཞེས་ཏོ་དུ་འོད་པོ་སྲོད་ བཞེ་བཞི་

B: You're welcome. བཞེ་བཞི་

3b A: I can't find my notebook. ང་འབ་སྡེབས་པའི་ཐོན་

B: I can see it. Look! It's over there, on the teacher's desk. མིང་དོན་དུ་འོད་ མིང་དོན་དུ་འོད་

A: Thank you. Oh! That's not my notebook. It's Drukar's. བཞེ་བཞི་

4 Oh! That's not my pen. It's Lily's. བཞེ་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་བཞི་

4a Oh! That's not your fault. It's mine. འཛིན་ཐོན་དུ་འོད་

5 It's your turn now. འཛིན་ཐོན་དུ་འོད་

5a Now it's your turn to tell us a story. འཛིན་ཐོན་དུ་འོད་བཞི་
Unit 13 What colour is it?

Useful Expressions

1 What colour is it? It's red / black / white / blue / green / yellow / brown / orange. 
2 Which man? The one in / on the... 
3 What is in my hand? 
4 What colour are they? 
5 Can't you see? 
6 What colour is the sky? The sky is blue.

Grammar

Using "what is" and "who is." "What is..." || "who is..."

1 "What is"... 
   1a What colour is it? It's green. 
   1b What colour is Cairang's Tibetan robe? It's blue and yellow. 
   1c What colour are these / those? They are black.

2 "Who is..."...
**Text Explanation**

1 What colour is it? 

1a A: Hi! What colour is your family's tent? 

B: It's black.

1b A: Do you know what colour my family's tent is? 

B: No, I don't know. Is it black and white? 

A: Yes, you are right. Good guess.

2 What day is today? 

Today is Monday / Tuesday / Thursday...

3 Excuse me, Jim. Who's that man? 

3a A: Excuse me, Cairang who's that boy? 

B: Which boy? 

A: The one on the black bike. 

B: Oh, that's Dorji.

4 Can't you see? They're boxes! 

4a A: What are these? 

B: Can't you see? They're boxes! 

A: Yes, but what are in the boxes? 

B: Oh, shirts. 

A: What colour are they? 

B: They're white.
Unit 14 That's mine

Useful Expressions

1 Whose is this / that…?  ོ་མེད / དབང་པོ་

2 Is it yours? No, it's not mine. བོད་པའི་ཞིང་ བོད་པའི་ཞིང་

3 Let me see, please. གྲུབ་ཞིང་

4 I think it's his / hers. དཔའ་ཟེར / བདེ་བའི་

5 Put it on. བོད་པའི་ཞིང་

6 Whose…are these? …བོད་པའི་ཞིང་

Text Explanation

1 Whose shirt is this? ོ་མིན་པ་

1a Whose trousers are these? ོ་མིན་པ་

They're the twins'. ོ་དང་རྒྱུ་དེ་གཞི་ཞིང་

2 You must look after your clothes. རོ་ཏོ་ཐོས་ལྷང་བོད་དཔའ་མིན་པ་

Look after… རོ་ཏོ་ཐོས་ལྷང་བོད་དཔའ་མིན་པ་

2a You must look after the baby. རོ་ཏོ་ཐོས་ལྷང་བོད་དཔའ་མིན་པ་གཞི་ཞིང་

2b You should look after the public things. རོ་ཏོ་ཐོས་ལྷང་བོད་དཔའ་མིན་པ་གཞི་ཞིང་

3 They are on Mrs. Green's clothesline. རོ་ཏོ་ཐོས་ལྷང་བོད་དཔའ་མིན་པ་གཞི་ཞིང་

3a There are many clothes on the students' clothesline. སྨིན་པོ་སྦྱོང་དཀའ་མིན་པ་

4 Is this yours, Lily? བོད་པའི་ཞིང་

4a A: Is this yours, Zhaxi? བོད་པའི་ཞིང་

B: No, it's not mine. It's hers. བོད་པའི་ཞིང་

5 Let me see, please. No, it's not mine. I think it's his. གྲུབ་ཞིང་

5a Teacher: Whose coat is this? Is this yours, Duden? ཤིས་པའི་ཞིང་

Duden: Let me see, please. No, it's not mine. I think it's his. གྲུབ་ཞིང་

49
Teacher: Whose? Hangdi's?  གཞིག་དབང་པོ་ཉིད།
Duden: Yes.  ཤེ་རེ།
Teacher: Hi, Hangdi. Come here. Is this yours?  གཞིག་དབང་པོ་འོག་མེགས་པ་འགྲེལ་
Hangdi: Yes, it's mine.  ཤེ་རེ།
Teacher: Here you are. Put it on, please. You must look after your clothes.  གཞིག་
Hangdi: Yes, thank you, Teacher.  ཤེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས་བཀྲ་ཤིང་།

Grammar བསྟོན་འཛིན་དགག་སོ།

1 "Whose" བོས་"who"འོག་མེགས་པའི་ཚགས་བུས།
   1a Whose hat is this? It's his hat / It's his.  རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས། ཤེ་རེ། / ཤེ་རེ།
   1b Whose pen is this? It's my pen. / It's mine.  རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས། རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས། / རྟེ།

2 Possessive Pronouns འཇིག་ཞིག་ཆོས་སོ།

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Mine</th>
<th>They are mine.</th>
<th></th>
<th>They are theirs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My ལྷེ།</td>
<td>རྟེ།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
<td>Your གཞི་།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your གཞི་།</td>
<td>རྟེ།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
<td>Their གཞི་།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His ལེན།</td>
<td>རྟེ།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
<td>Their གཞི།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her ལེན།</td>
<td>རྟེ།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
<td>Her ལེན།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our ལེན།</td>
<td>རྟེ།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
<td>Ours ལེན།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your ལེན།</td>
<td>རྟེ།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
<td>Your ལེན།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Their ལེན།</td>
<td>རྟེ།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
<td>Their ལེན།</td>
<td>རྟེ་སྤེངས་ལུགས།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 15 What's the time?

Useful Expressions

1. That's nice.
2. Give it to Mr Hu.
3. What's the time? It's seven thirty.
4. I don't have a watch.
5. I must go.

Text Explanation

1. What's the time? / What time is it?

It's nine thirty. It's about nine thirty. It's nine o'clock. It's half past nine. It's five to seven.

2. Give it to Mr Hu.

2a Please give your grandfather the pipe.
2b Please give the pipe to your grandfather.

3. I don't have a watch.

3a A: Excuse me, what time is it, please?
B: Sorry, I don't have a watch. I think it's about six o'clock.
C: Let me see. No, it's six eighteen.
A: Oh, I must go home.

4. Put your shoes on. Take your shoes off.
4a Put on your shoes. Take off your shoes.
4b Put your coat on. Take your coat off.
Unit 16 Mainly revision

Useful Expressions

1 They look young.  jsonObject
2 See you soon!  jsonObject
3 What is the date today? Today is April first, 2000.  jsonObject
4 When is your birthday? My birthday is July second.  jsonObject

Text Explanation

1 Her skirt is on her bed.  jsonObject

…on the bed…  jsonObject

…in bed…  jsonObject

1a He is on the bed.  jsonObject

1b He is in the bed.  jsonObject

2 Yes, it's an old photo of my family.  jsonObject

2a A: What's this? Is this a picture of Xiaqong Monastery?  jsonObject

B: Yes, it is.  jsonObject

A: What's that?  jsonObject

B: Oh, it's an old picture of this monastery a long time ago.  jsonObject

A: They're quite different. Look, in the old picture the buildings are very nice and vivid. But there are no nice buildings in the new picture, right?  jsonObject

B: Yes, it's true.  jsonObject
3 Solve this puzzle. ང་གི་གླེང་བའི་ཐུན་ལོག

...solve...

3a Solve this problem. བོད་ཀྱིས་བོད་ཀྱི་སྐད་ལ་ཡོད་

4 They look young! སེམས་བཀོད་སྐད་ལ་ཡོད་

...look...

4a You look hungry. སེམས་བཀོད་སྐད་ལ་ཡོད་

4b He looks drunk. སེམས་བཀོད་སྐད་ལ་ཡོད་

4c You look fine. སེམས་བཀོད་སྐད་ལ་ཡོད་

5 When is Tibetan New Year? Tibetan New Year is February first. རྩི་བོད་ལྷག་

དབུས་ཀྱི་སྐད་ལ་ཡོད་
Unit 17 Could you help me, please?

Dialogue

Lhomotso: Good morning, Losang.

Losang: Good morning, Lhomotso.

Lhomotso: I have to herd the yaks on the mountain, but there are so many. Could you help me, please?

Losang: Certainly, I'd like to.

Lhomotso: Thanks, Losang.

Losang: You're welcome. I'm happy to go with you. Let's be off.

Text Explanation

1 Could you help me, please?

1a Could you help me roast this sack of barley, please?

1b Could you help me fetch some firewood?

1c Could you help me to give this letter to her?

2 Certainly.

2a Certainly, I'd like to.

2b Certainly, let me help you.

2c Certainly, it would be my pleasure.

3 You're welcome. [You're / You are]
Grammar

1 Adjectives

Dondrup's home is far.
Cumu's home is near.
He is happy.
She is sad.
Two people are few.
Twenty people are many.
A horse is a big animal.
An ant is a small animal.
This sack is full.
That sack is empty.
The full sack is heavy.
The empty sack is light.
Unit 18 Look after your things!

Dialogue

Doma: Could you help me, Dorji? 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
Dorji: Certainly. What's wrong? 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
Doma: I missed three goats down in the gully. It's getting dark now. I'm afraid to go there alone. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
Dorji: Don't worry. I can help you. Let's go together. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ

Doma: Thank you very much. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
Dorji: Nevermind. Let's be off now. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ

Text Explanation

1 What's wrong? 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
1a What's wrong with the horse? 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
1b What's wrong with your lover? 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
1c What's wrong with her / him / you / them / it? 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ

2 I am afraid (be afraid of...) 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
2a I am afraid of ghosts. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
2b I am afraid of snakes. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
2c I am afraid to go to such a dangerous place. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ

3 Don't worry. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
3a Don't worry about that. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
3b Don't worry about me. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
3c Don't worry about this matter. 拉萨 องค์กรข้าราชการ
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, they, we, she, he, it</td>
<td>me, you, them, us, her, him, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm a student.</td>
<td>Please help me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You're American.</td>
<td>Can I help you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They're poor.</td>
<td>Let's help them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We're farmers.</td>
<td>Can you help us?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She's Tibetan.</td>
<td>I want to talk to her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He's English.</td>
<td>Please believe him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's a cat.</td>
<td>Can you catch it?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 19 Food and drink

Dialogue

Yongtso: Hello, Renchin! How are you today? นูงตสอง หยิน ผันตสเพนน นู่น?
Renchin: Fine, thanks. And you? หนานตสเพนน ผันตสเพนน นู่น?
Yongtso: I'm fine too. Would you like something to drink? What about a cup of milk tea? หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
Renchin: OK. What about you, Yongtso? หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
Yongtso: I'd like a cup of cold water. What about something to eat? หนานตสเพนน นู่น?

Renchin: Some tsamba, please. หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
Yongtso: Here it is, help yourself. หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
Renchin: Thanks. หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
Yongtso: Never mind. หนานตสเพนน นู่น?

Text Explanation ลังขั้นlfที่สุดที่สุด

1 Would you like...? หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
1a Would you like some tea? หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
No, thanks. หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
1b Would you like mutton or pork? หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
Either will be fine, madam. หนานตสเพนน นู่น?

2 What would you like? หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
I'd like a bowl of yoghurt, please. หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
2a What would you like to eat, mutton or beef? หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
I'd like some mutton, please. หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
What about some fruit? หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
OK, I'd like some apples. หนานตสเพนน นู่น?
1 Articles: "a," "an," "the."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;a&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;an&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;the&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a banana, a yak, a piece of bread, a box of matches</td>
<td>a beautiful girl</td>
<td>She is a beautiful girl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an apple, an ice-cream, an old man, an ugly face, and an eraser</td>
<td>a handsome boy</td>
<td>He is a handsome boy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an hour, an honest man, and an honour</td>
<td>A monkey ate a banana.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 some

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>some cakes</th>
<th>some eggs</th>
<th>some tsamba</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some bread</td>
<td>some rice</td>
<td>some meat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 How many horses can you see?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3a I can see three.</th>
<th>3b I can see some.</th>
<th>3c I can't see any.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Dialogue

Huamo: Hello, Zhaxi, how are you doing?
Zhaxi: I'm OK, how about you?
Huamo: Not bad. What's that in your hand?
Zhaxi: This is a kite. Can you fly a kite?
Huamo: Let me try. Like this?
Zhaxi: No, don't fly it like that. Fly it like this.
Huamo: OK, thanks.
Zhaxi: Look! Huamo. There are many people over there.
Huamo: Oh, are there any children?
Zhaxi: Yes, there are. There are some children playing games. Shall we go and join them?
Huamo: Great, let's go.

Text Explanation

1 How are you? I am OK / not bad.

1a How is Lhomotso? She's great / fine.

2 Can you do……? 

2a Can you ride a horse?

Yes, I can.

3 Don't do it like that.

3a Don't speak like that, please speak slowly.

3b Don't eat like that, please eat like this.

4 How many children are there? 

There are no children / none.

There is only one child.
4a How many yaks does your family have? གཞིག་ཅན་ལ་བདག་གི་གཞིས།
Our family has thirty yaks. གཞིག་ཅན་ལ་བདག་གི་གཞིས།

4b Are there any wolves in this place? ལྷེའི་དགེའི་ཐོབ་མོས།
Yes, there are some. ལྷེའི་དགེའི་ཐོབ་མོས།

4c How many Tibetan Buddhist sects are there? རྩེ་བཞུགས་བཟོད་པའི་ཐོབ་མོས།
There are mainly four sects. རྩེ་བཞུགས་བཟོད་པའི་ཐོབ་མོས།

**Grammar** རྩེ་བཞུགས་བཟོད་པའི་ཐོབ་མོས།

"**There + be**" རྩེ་བཞུགས་བཟོད་པའི་ཐོབ་མོས།

a. There is a map of Tibet on the wall. རྩེ་བཞུགས་བཟོད་པའི་ཐོབ་མོས།
b. There are three keys in her pocket. རྩེ་བཞུགས་བཟོད་པའི་ཐོབ་མོས།
c. There is nothing in the box. རྩེ་བཞུགས་ཐུབ་པའི་ཐོབ་མོས།

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ཚིག་འཇུས།</th>
<th>ཤེས་རབ་འཇུས།</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one/a yak</td>
<td>two yaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one/a pen</td>
<td>some pens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one/a rabbit</td>
<td>three rabbits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one/a house</td>
<td>four houses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baby city</td>
<td>babies cities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy key</td>
<td>boys keys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife thief</td>
<td>wives thieves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish</td>
<td>dishes matches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>classes boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zoo</td>
<td>zoos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio</td>
<td>radios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;-s&quot; གཞིག་དངོས།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 21 What are you doing?

Dialogue

Sonam: Hello, Uncle Dunba, where are you going?

Uncle Dunba: I'm going to watch sheep on the mountain. How about you?

Sonam: I'm going to visit Drongker. Is she at home?

Uncle Dunba: Yes, she is at home.

Sonam: What is she doing at home?

Uncle Dunba: Well, her grandmother is telling her the story of Gesar.

Sonam: Oh, I'd like to hear that. It's getting late, I must hurry. See you.

Uncle Dunba: See you later.

Text Explanation

1 Where are you going? གཞན་དམངས་ནས་འདི་རེད།

I'm going home. རུས་བཞག་བཞིན་ནོད།

1a Where is Lhamo going? གཞན་དམངས་ནས་འདི་རེད།

She is going to the hospital. རུས་བཞག་བཞིན་ནོད།

1b Where are the monks going? རུས་བཞག་བཞིན་ནོད།

They are going to the temple. རུས་བཞག་བཞིན་ནོད།

2 What are they doing? རུས་བཞག་བཞིན་ནོད།

They are going to school. རུས་བཞག་བཞིན་ནོད།

2a Losang is listening to some music. རུས་བཞག་བཞིན་ནོད།

2b Huadan is playing with a girl. རུས་བཞག་བཞིན་ནོད།

2c Cumu is drawing some pictures. རུས་བཞག་བཞིན་ནོད།
3 Are they at home? ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།
3a Yangjian is at home. ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།
3b Yondan is not at home. ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།
3c Danzen is in the mountains. ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།
3d Lhomotso is in her bed, listening to the radio. ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།

Grammar ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།

"Present Continuous Tense" ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།"am/is/are+verb+ing" ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།
I am dancing.
She/He is singing.
Duden is studying.

Present Continuous Tense (statement form). ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།(གསུམ་བཟོ་ལས།)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>dancing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She/He</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>singing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duden</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>studying.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Present Continuous Tense (question form). ཤེས་རབ་བཞིན་ལས།(ཞི་ལས།)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>you/we</td>
<td>smoking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>he/she</td>
<td>talking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Duden</td>
<td>coming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>moving?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 22 Let's go to school today!

Useful Expressions

The days of the week.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>Wednesday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Friday</th>
<th>Saturday</th>
<th>Sunday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>རང་ངས་</td>
<td>རང་དར་</td>
<td>རང་མས་</td>
<td>རང་མཚོན་</td>
<td>རང་གོས་</td>
<td>རང་དུ་</td>
<td>རང་སྟོན་</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1aA: What day is (it) tomorrow? རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་| B: It's Tuesday. རང་མཚོན་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་

1b Cumu: Hi, Danzen! What day is it today? རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་| Danzen: Today is Sunday. རང་མཚོན་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་

Cumu: Oh, let's go to the park. རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་| Danzen: OK, let's go. རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་

1c Dorji: Hey, Dawa! Do you have an eraser? རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་| Dawa: Yes, I do. But it's not good. རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་

Dorji: That's OK. Can I borrow it? རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་| Dawa: Certainly! But give it back soon. རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་

Dorji: OK! Thanks very much. རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་| Dawa: Nevermind. རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་

Text Explanation

1 What day is it today / tomorrow? རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་

It's Wednesday. རང་མས་| It's Thursday. རང་མཚོན་

1a What are you going to do on Friday? རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་

I am going to have a date with my girlfriend on Friday afternoon. རང་དུ་པོ་མ་ཐེ་རེ་
1b What is he going to do on Sunday?  
He is going to visit his dear teacher on Sunday.

2 Can I borrow your…?  
2a Can I borrow your ruler / pencil / eraser?  
Certainly / Sure / Of course.

2b Can I borrow some money from her?  
No, you can't. She doesn't have any money.

Grammar  
Possessive Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mine</th>
<th>This is mine.</th>
<th>Yours</th>
<th>Is this yours?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>His</td>
<td>These are his.</td>
<td>Hers</td>
<td>Are these hers?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ours</td>
<td>It's ours.</td>
<td>theirs</td>
<td>These are theirs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Do you / we / I / they / the students have some money? | Yes, you / we / I / they / the students do. | No, you / we / I / they don't. |

| Does she / he / Cairang have any English books? | Yes, she / he / Cairang does. | No, she / he / Cairang doesn't. |
Unit 23 Where are you from?

Dialogue

Lodan: Excuse me! Where are you from?

Kevin: I'm from America, how about you? Are you from Xunhua?

Lodan: No, I'm not from Xunhua. I'm from Jiantsa.

Kevin: Are you a student?

Lodan: Yes, I am a student in Malho Normal School.

Kevin: Oh, how is your written Tibetan?

Lodan: Just so-so. Do you speak Tibetan?

Kevin: Only a little.

Lodan: Do you like Tibetan places?

Kevin: Of course. Very much. They are great!

Lodan: What do you like about Tibet?

Kevin: I like the scenery, the people, customs, and so on.

Lodan: OK! Thank you for talking to me. I'll visit you someday. See you later!

Kevin: See you soon!

Text Explanation

1 Where are you from? / Where do you come from? I'm from Ganzi. / I come from Ganzi.
2 Are you a farmer? No, I'm not. I'm a teacher. / I am a graduate student.

3 Do you speak English? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

3a Does he speak Tibetan? No, he doesn't. He only speaks English.

4 What do you like about the book? I like the sentences and the pictures.

Grammar

The present Indefinite Tense

"Where" "When" "what" "Be, do"
Unit 24 What do you like?

Dialogue

Nyingkar: What do you like (eating), Pencu?

Pencu: I like beef the most (a lot). I don't like fish and I like fruits a little.

Nyingkar: What about your mother? Does she like fish?

Pencu: No, she doesn't. She doesn't like fish at all. She likes candy and fruits a lot and she likes potatoes too. What about you?

Nyingkar: I like butter, milk tea, and yoghurt. Also, I like smoking tobacco. It's a simple pleasure for me.

Text Explanation

1 What do you like (eating)?

I like (eating) mutton. I like tsamba.

2 What do you like (doing)?

I like riding horses / yaks.
I like doing my homework.
I like being with my lover in the garden.

3 Does Uncle Dunba like making jokes?

Yes, he does. He likes making jokes.

No, he doesn't like to. He doesn't like making jokes.
He likes gambling.

69
Grammar

"Do"="does"

Do you speak English?
Yes, we/I do.
No, we/I don't.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do</th>
<th>have some money?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Yes, do/don't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>students</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Does she / he / Lhomotso speak English?
No, she / he / Lhomotso doesn't speak English.
Yes, she / he / Lhomotso speaks English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Does</th>
<th>have any English books?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>Yes, she / he / Cairang does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairang</td>
<td>No, she / he / Cairang doesn't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do you like cooking? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do you like</th>
<th>herding yaks?</th>
<th>Yes, I do.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reading newspapers?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>singing love songs?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>riding horses?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

70
Unit 25 People and work

Dialogue

Gunchu: Good afternoon! Mr Peet, where are you from?

Mr Peet: I'm from America.

Gunchu: What do you do?

Mr Peet: I am an English teacher.

Gunchu: Where do you work / teach?

Mr Peet: I work / teach in Jiantsa Nationalities Middle School.

Gunchu: Do you speak Tibetan?

Mr Peet: A little. I go to Tibetan classes every day.

Gunchu: Great! Do you like working in Jiantsa?

Mr Peet: Yes, I do. The weather is so fine in Jiantsa and the people here are so friendly.

Gunchu: Do you have any children?

Mr Peet: Yes, I do. I have two, a son and a daughter.

Gunchu: Are they with you here?

Mr Peet: Yes, they are.

Gunchu: What do they do?

Mr Peet: They are students in the Second Primary School.

Text Explanation

1 What do you do? I'm a teacher / farmer / worker. He's a solider / driver / student.
2 Where do you work? འབོད་ལ་ཕ་རོལ་འནོད་པ་ལ།
I work in a factory / school. རང་ལེན་/ མི་འོད་ཏེ་ཐབས་བཟང་པ་ལ།

2a Where does your father work? རྒྱ་མཚོའི་ཕ་རོལ་འནོད་པ་ལ།
He works in a farm / in a shop. རོག་ལེན་/ མི་འོད་ཏེ་ཐབས་བཟང་པ་ལ།

3 Good morning! རོག་ལེན་
3a Good afternoon! རོག་ལེན་
3b Good evening! རོག་ལེན་

Grammar བོད་སྐད་འབེལ་
འབོད་ལ་ཕ་རོལ་འནོད་པ་ལ་བོད་སྐད་འབེལ་

1a Do you go to school everyday?
Yes, I go to school everyday.
No, I don't go to school everyday.

1b Does the teacher come to class everyday?
Yes, he comes to class everyday.
No, he doesn't come to class everyday.

1c Are you watching TV right now?
Yes, I am watching TV right now.
No, I am not watching TV right now.

1d Is your mother cooking right now?
Yes, she is cooking right now.
No, she is not cooking right now.
Unit 26 What time do you get up?

Useful Expressions

1 What time is it? ข้าม
   1a It's nine thirty / It's half past nine. ข้าม
   1b It's nine o'clock. ข้าม
   1c It's quarter past nine. ข้าม
   1d It's five to nine. ข้าม

2 A: What time do you go to bed? ข้าม
   B: I go to bed at ten. ข้าม

3 A: What time do you get up? ข้าม
   B: I get up at six thirty. ข้าม

4 A: What time do you have breakfast? ข้าม
   B: I have breakfast at seven thirty. ข้าม

5 A: What time do you go to school? ข้าม
   B: I go to school at eight o'clock. ข้าม

Text Explanation

1 It's time to...||...ข้าม||...ข้าม
   1a A: What time is it? ข้าม
       B: It's two o'clock. ข้าม
       A: Oh, it's time to go to class. ข้าม
       B: OK, let's go. ข้าม

2 What time (when) do you...? ข้าม
   2a I visit my grandmother on weekends. ข้าม
2b I have breakfast at seven thirty in the morning.

2c I have supper in the evening.

2d I study Tibetan during summer vacations.

3 I often do... but sometimes I ....

3a I often read books, but sometimes I listen to music.

3b I often ride horses, but sometimes I ride male yaks.

---

**Grammar**

**Time Expression**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>昨日</td>
<td>今日</td>
<td>明日</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last week / month / year</td>
<td>This week / month / year</td>
<td>Next week / month / year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>昨週 / 月 / 年</td>
<td>今週 / 月 / 年</td>
<td>明週 / 月 / 年</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Monday</td>
<td>This Monday</td>
<td>Next Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>前週月</td>
<td>今週月</td>
<td>明週月</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five minutes ago</td>
<td>Now</td>
<td>In five minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>五分前</td>
<td>現在</td>
<td>五分後</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After five minutes 五分後 Long ago 後

Once upon a time 以前 A long time ago 後

In ancient times 在古 Many years ago 後
Dialogue

1 Yangjian: What does Gensang do?
Caihua: He's a teacher.
Yangjian: Is he teaching now?
Caihua: No, he isn't. He is shopping.
Yangjian: Oh, I want to buy a nice gift for my mother's birthday.

2 Tarlu: Good morning! Can I help you, Uncle Nymka?
Uncle Nymka: Yes, please. I want some meat.
Tarlu: OK, how much do you want?
Uncle Nymka: One and a half kilos, please.
Tarlu: Here you are.
Uncle Nymka: How much is it?
Tarlu: Fifteen rmb, please.
Uncle Nymka: Thank you.

Text Explanation

1 What do you want to buy?
I want to buy some clothes.
I want to buy a pack of cigarettes.

2 A: How much is this shirt?
B: Twenty yuan, please.
A: Oh, it's too expensive.
B: No, it's not expensive. It's cheap.
3 A: How much meat do you want?
B: (I want) One kilo, please.

Grammar

1 Countable nouns

Countable nouns are nouns that count, and they require a number or a quantifier to specify the amount.

1a How many apples / pens / books do you want?
   I want ten apples / pens / books, please!
   I want some apples / pens / books, please.

1b How many books do you want?
   I want a / one book / two books / some books / a lot of books / a few books / many books.

2 Uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns are nouns that are not countable, and they do not require a number or a quantifier.

2a How much bread / meat / butter do you want?
   I want a piece of bread / meat / butter.

2b How much money do you want?
   I want some / a lot of / much / a little money.

3 Additional common countable and uncountable nouns:

   advice, furniture, help, homework, information, jewellery, luck, money, mail, music, peace, traffic, weather, work, bread, cheese, coffee, food, fruit, milk, pepper, rice, salt, soup, sugar, tea, water.

3a I want some bread / meat / butter, please.

3b How much bread / meat / butter do you want?
Students' Book 2A

ষষ্ঠীরিক ইন্দ্রধনু
Unit 1 Welcome back!

Text Explanation

1 Good morning, Sir. འབྲེས་བཀའ་ཟིན། འབྲེས་བཀའ་ཟིན།
2 Welcome back to school! འབྲེས་བཀའ་ཟིན། འབྲེས་བཀའ་ཟིན།
3 May I come in, please? འབྲེས་བཀའ་ཟིན། འབྲེས་བཀའ་ཟིན།
4 It doesn't matter. འབྲེས་བཀའ་ཟིན། འབྲེས་བཀའ་ཟིན།

Grammar

1 རོ་བདུན་"so"་ཐེག་ཆེན་དང་ཐེག་ཆེན་ཐུབ་མི་ཚོས་ཀྱིས། རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་དུ་རིག་སུ་བོད་དུ་རིག་སུ་བོད་དུ་རིག་སུ་བོད་དུ་རིག་སུ་བོད་
   དུ་རིག་སུ་བོད་དུ་རིག་སུ་བོད་
1a This is our first lesson, so I don't know your names. རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
   རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ
1b He isn't hungry, so he doesn't want anything to eat. རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
   རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ
1c He isn't a Tibetan, so he doesn't know one word of Tibetan. རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
   རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ
1d You are a student, so you have to finish your homework. རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
   རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ
1e Is he from Lhasa? རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
   རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ
   I don't think so. རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ
1f Can you tell me where I can find a restaurant? རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
   རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ
   Sorry, I don't think so. རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
   རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ

2 Please study these uncountable words below. རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
2a I have your names on this piece of paper. རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
2b I would like to drink a cup of tea. རེད་དུ་བྱོན་བོ་ནོར་བོ རིག་སུ་བོད་
2c Could you pour me a glass of tea?  我可以倒一杯茶吗?
2d I bought a pair of shoes in the supermarket.  我在超市买了一双鞋。
2e He broke two bottles of beer.  他打碎了两瓶啤酒。
2f May I have a bowl of rice?  我能要一碗饭吗？
2g May I borrow your basketball, please?  我能借你的篮球吗？

2h Yes, you may. / Sure. / OK. / Please take it. / Certainly. / Of course. / No, you can't.  可以，给你。/ 当然。/ 好的。/ 请拿去。/ 当然可以。/ 当然可以。/ 不行。
3 I'm sorry I'm late.  对不起，我迟到了。
3a Sorry, I didn't finish my homework.  对不起，我昨晚没做完作业。
3b It doesn't matter this time, but come to school earlier next time.  这次没关系，下次早点来学校。
3c "Sorry" 说的是一种道歉的方式。
3d "Sorry"是英文中一种道歉的方式。

4 This ruler is longer than that one.  这把尺子比那把长。
4a A long ruler  一把长尺
4b A short ruler  一把短尺
4c A tall boy  一个高个子
4d A short boy  一个矮个子
4e A big piece of paper  一张大纸
4f A small piece of paper  一张小纸

4g Going by air is more expensive than going by bus.  坐飞机比坐公共汽车更贵。
4h Tibetan education is more available than before.  西藏的教育比以前更容易获得。
4i 西藏的教育比以前更容易获得。
5 Making comparisons in sentences without using "than." `tsa` can be used as "than.

5a The garden looks better after you weeded it. `tsa` can be used as "than.

5b You are much more beautiful since we last met. `tsa` can be used as "than.

6 The present continuous tense `tsa` can be used as "than.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am reading.</th>
<th>I am not reading.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You are reading.</td>
<td>You aren't reading.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He / She is reading.</td>
<td>He / She is not reading.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We / You / They are reading.</td>
<td>We / You / They are not reading</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

80
Unit 2 How you get to school

Text Explanation

1 A: What can you see in the picture?  B: I can see either the sun or the moon in the sky.

2a Could you cook supper for me?  Yes, I can. I can cook supper for you.

2b A: How many ships can you see?  B: I can see two ships.

3 A: How many students are in your class?  B: There are thirty students in my class.

Grammar

The Present Indefinite Tense

1 a) How do you usually go to school?  She usually comes to school by bike.

b) I usually walk to school, but I sometimes go by bus.

2 Practice answering these questions.

2a Do you often eat with chopsticks? Yes, I often eat with chopsticks.
No, I don't often eat with chopsticks.

2b What does she often use to eat? She often uses a spoon, fork, and knife to eat.

2c When does he usually get up? He usually gets up at six clock.
## Unit 3 Mid-Autumn Day

### Useful Expressions

A: Would you like to taste a mooncake? 你想尝尝月饼吗？
B: Yes, please give me a big one. 是的，请给我一个大的。
A: Is this one big enough? 这个够大吗？
B: No, sorry. It's too big, please give me one that is smaller than this. 不行，太大会了，请给我一个比这个小的。
A: OK, is this right? 好了，这合适吗？
B: Yes, thank you very much. 是的，非常感谢。
A: No problem. 不客气。

### Grammar

1 **Comparison of adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>क्षणिक</th>
<th>आधुनिक</th>
<th>सहीतिक</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>er / est</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>smaller</td>
<td>smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er / est</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>nicer</td>
<td>nicest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er / est</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y-ier / iest</td>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>heavier</td>
<td>heaviest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>वरिष्ठ</th>
<th>&quot;more&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;most&quot;</th>
<th>वरिष्ठ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>more careful</td>
<td>most careful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some apples</td>
<td>more apples</td>
<td>the most apples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>more dangerous</td>
<td>the most dangerous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many, much</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

83
2 2. Life was harder than it is today. 2. Life was harder than it is today.
2b She is older than me. She is older than me.
2c The temperature is becoming higher and higher. The temperature is becoming higher and higher.
2d Zhaxi is taller than Yondan. Zhaxi is taller than Yondan.
2e There are more kinds of mooncakes here as compared to other shops. There are more kinds of mooncakes here as compared to other shops.
2f Going by train is faster than by bus. Going by train is faster than by bus.

3 3a She is the oldest among us. She is the oldest among us.
3b In our room he gets up (the) earliest. In our room he gets up (the) earliest.
3c The tallest student in our class is Zhaxi. The tallest student in our class is Zhaxi.
Unit 4 We're going to work on a farm

Dialogue

A: What are you going to do next week?
B: Nothing much, why?
A: We're going to work on a farm. Don't you know?
B: Good idea! It's much better than having class?
A: Sure, don't be late. Oh! And put on your old clothes.
B: OK. Listen, that's the bell. It's time for class.

Grammar

1 "Be going to"

"be going to" ต้องการจะลงที่ ต้องการจะลงที่
"Be going to" ต้องการจะลงที่ ต้องการจะลงที่
1a Where are they going to meet?
They are going to meet in the park.

1b When is she going to visit that monastery?
She is going to visit that monastery on Sunday.

1c What are you going to be in the future?
I am going to be a scientist.
Useful Expressions

1. Dodben has some tomatoes. Zhaxi has more tomatoes than Lodan. Yondan has the most of all.

2. The first horse is carrying a few things. The second one is carrying fewer than the first. The third one is carrying the fewest of all.

Grammar

1. Small, smaller, smallest
2. Large, larger, largest
3. Thin, thinner, thinnest
4. Busy, busier, busiest
5. Dirty, dirtier, dirtiest
Lesson 19 Working on a farm

It's a fine day today, and everyone is busy. They are working hard on the farm. The children are picking apples. Look! There's Meimei! She's very strong. She's lifting that ladder. Now she's holding it for Jim. Jim is climbing up the ladder. He's picking the apples on that tree. He's putting them in a basket. Some of the apples are hard to reach. They are too high. Be careful, Jim! It's dangerous. Oh, good! He's coming down the ladder, now.

"You don't have any apples, Jim," says Li Lei. "I have more than you."

"Do I have fewer apples than you? Let me see!" says Jim.

Jim looks at Li Lei's apples. "Oh!" he says. "Yes, you have more than me. But mine are better than yours. Look! Yours are green, and quite small. Mine are red, and they're much bigger!"

Translation of Lesson 19

Lesson 19 Working on a farm

It's a fine day today, and everyone is busy. They are working hard on the farm. The children are picking apples. Look! There's Meimei! She's very strong. She's lifting that ladder. Now she's holding it for Jim. Jim is climbing up the ladder. He's picking the apples on that tree. He's putting them in a basket. Some of the apples are hard to reach. They are too high. Be careful, Jim! It's dangerous. Oh, good! He's coming down the ladder, now.

"You don't have any apples, Jim," says Li Lei. "I have more than you."

"Do I have fewer apples than you? Let me see!" says Jim.

Jim looks at Li Lei's apples. "Oh!" he says. "Yes, you have more than me. But mine are better than yours. Look! Yours are green, and quite small. Mine are red, and they're much bigger!"

Translation of Lesson 19

Lesson 19 Working on a farm

It's a fine day today, and everyone is busy. They are working hard on the farm. The children are picking apples. Look! There's Meimei! She's very strong. She's lifting that ladder. Now she's holding it for Jim. Jim is climbing up the ladder. He's picking the apples on that tree. He's putting them in a basket. Some of the apples are hard to reach. They are too high. Be careful, Jim! It's dangerous. Oh, good! He's coming down the ladder, now.

"You don't have any apples, Jim," says Li Lei. "I have more than you."

"Do I have fewer apples than you? Let me see!" says Jim.

Jim looks at Li Lei's apples. "Oh!" he says. "Yes, you have more than me. But mine are better than yours. Look! Yours are green, and quite small. Mine are red, and they're much bigger!"
Unit 6 Shall we go to the park?

Useful Expressions

1 A: Would you like to come to supper?
B: Oh! Thank you, I would love to. But I must ask my parents first. What time shall I come?
A: We have our evening meal at about a quarter past six. Why don't you come a little earlier?
B: OK. Sure, see you.
A: Bye!

2 A: Which is the biggest bird in Tibetan areas?
B: The biggest bird in Tibetan areas is the eagle.
2a A: Which animal does our life depend on at our home?
B: The yak is the animal that our lives depend on.
2b A: Which animal do you like best?
B: I like sheep best.
2c A: What does a cat look like?
B: A cat looks like a small leopard.

Grammar

1 would you like- "would"ི་མ་མེད་དུ་འཇིག་ེན། བོད་ལྷ་ཐོང་པ་བོད་སྲིད་བུ་ སྦྱོར་བཞིན་ཡིན། "would you like"ིས་བོད་ཀྱི་དོན་"ི་མ་མེད...ི་མ་མེད"ཐིག་པར་ བོད་ཀྱི་དོན། "What about"འདིས་"ི་དོན་ཚུལ། ཁེང་དེ།"ི་དོན་ཚུལ། བོད་ཀྱི་དོན། I am going. What about you?
1a Shall we_____? རང་...ཐེན་བསྐུར།
Shall we go at ten? 

1b Why not _____? 

Why not go at ten? 

2 "Let's" "Let us" 

2a Let's go at ten! 

3 "What about" "What about" 

3a What about seven? 

4 Would you like... 

4a Would you like to go at ten? 

---

89
Unit 7 Mainly revision

Useful Expressions

1 A: What time is it?  
B: It is a quarter past ten.  

1a A: What time are we leaving tomorrow?  
B: Tomorrow we are leaving at twenty minutes past five.

1b A: When are you going to start class?  
B: I am going to start class this afternoon at three thirty.

1c A: Could you please tell me what time the bank is open?  
B: Certainly, the bank is open at two thirty.

2 A: Shall we play tennis tomorrow at two pm?  
B: What about four o'clock?  
A: OK, what time shall we meet?  
B: How about three thirty?

2a Be careful! That dog is trying to bite you.  
2b Look out! They are pouring water from their window.

3 How to make suggestions

3a Be careful! That dog is trying to bite you.  
3b Look out! They are pouring water from their window.
3c Don't jump into that river, it's too dangerous.  རོག་པའི་ཆབ་མེད་པས། ཨ་དང་ཤིན་ཏིང་།
3d Be careful! That ladder is broken.  བོད་མོང་ཤིིང་། རྡེ་ཞེས་པར་མེད་པ་རོ།

Grammar བདེ་ཚོགས་དུས་དགོས།

དུས་ཚོགས་བཞི་བཞི་དེ་བཞི་སུམ་སོགས་"past"དང་"to"བཞི་ཚོགས་དུས་དགོས།

"ཏེ་མས+past+དུས་ཚོགས་"ཅུ་སྟོད་དུས་ཚོགས་སུམ་སོགས་འདི་ཆོས་ས། ིེ་དེ་
དུས་ཚོགས་ཅུ་སྟོད་དུས་ཚོགས་སུམ་སོགས་འདི་ཆོས་ས། "past"ལེགས་བཞི། "དུས་
+to+དུས་ཚོགས་"ཅུ་སྟོད་དུས་ཚོགས་སུམ་སོགས་འདི་ཆོས་ས། ིེ་དེ་བཞི་སུམ་སོགས།

a quarter past six བདེ་ཚོགས་བཞི་བཞི་དེ་བཞི་སུམ་སོགས་
half past ten རོག་པའི་ཆབ་མེད་པས།
twenty minutes past nine རོག་པའི་ཆབ་མེད་པས།
a quarter to three རོག་པའི་ཆབ་མེད་པས།
five minutes to five རོག་པའི་ཆབ་མེད་པས་ཤིང་།
Unit 8 Where do you sit?

Look at the picture on twenty nine in your book and answer these questions.

1 Where does their teacher usually stand in the classroom?
2 Where does Lily sit in the classroom?
3 What things are usually in front of their classroom?
4 What is on their left hand side?
5 Where are the pots of flowers in their classroom?

Lesson 31 Who has the eraser?

Children often love to play this game. They play it like this: six students stand in a row in front of the class. They put their hands behind their backs, so you can't see their hands. The teacher gives one of them an eraser. The eraser goes from one student to another first one way, then another. They must keep their hands behind their backs. The other students in the class keep their eyes closed. They mustn't look.

Then the teacher says: "Stop and put your hands in front of you now."

The six students put their hands in front of them. Now the other students open their eyes, and guess who has the eraser. They ask questions like "Li Lei, is it in your right hand?"

They can have only five guesses.

Translation of Lesson 31

Where do you sit?

Children often love to play this game. They play it like this: six students stand in a row in front of the class. They put their hands behind their backs, so you can't see their hands. The teacher gives one of them an eraser. The eraser goes from one student to another first one way, then another. They must keep their hands behind their backs. The other students in the class keep their eyes closed. They mustn't look.

Then the teacher says: "Stop and put your hands in front of you now."

The six students put their hands in front of them. Now the other students open their eyes, and guess who has the eraser. They ask questions like "Li Lei, is it in your right hand?"

They can have only five guesses.

Translation of Lesson 31

Where do you sit?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In</th>
<th>Tönsum</th>
<th>There is a glove in my desk.</th>
<th>ཡེ་ཞིག་ནས་ཐེག་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་བོད་ལོར་</th>
<th>1 ིུལ་ཡུལ་བོད་ལོར་ཉིད་ཀྱི་བོད་ལོར་</th>
<th>93</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>རྒྱུན་</td>
<td>The snow flower is on the mountain</td>
<td>རེ་ཐོབ་དཔེར་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under</td>
<td>རྡོག་</td>
<td>We are under the sky.</td>
<td>རང་ཐོབ་དཔེར་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At</td>
<td>ཚིག་པ་</td>
<td>She's at home. I will leave at six o’clock.</td>
<td>ཁྱིད་ལོའི་གནས་དཔེར་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Near</td>
<td>རྣམ་</td>
<td>Near my home there is a lake.</td>
<td>རྣམ་ནི་གནས་དཔེར་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>རབའ་</td>
<td>I went inside a supermarket.</td>
<td>རབའ་གོང་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>རློ་</td>
<td>We meet outside of the school gate.</td>
<td>རློ་གོང་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behind</td>
<td>རྣམ་</td>
<td>The classroom is behind the library.</td>
<td>རྣམ་ནི་གནས་དཔེར་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In front of</td>
<td>རློ་</td>
<td>The bus stop is in front of the toilet.</td>
<td>རློ་གོང་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the left</td>
<td>རྒྱུན་</td>
<td>The bookshop is left of the garden.</td>
<td>རྒྱུན་གོང་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the middle of</td>
<td>སྟོན་པ་</td>
<td>Ziling is in the middle of China.</td>
<td>སྟོན་པ་གོང་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the top of</td>
<td>རློ་</td>
<td>Tibet is on the top of the world.</td>
<td>རློ་གོང་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the back of</td>
<td>རྣམ་</td>
<td>The factory is at the back of the airport.</td>
<td>རྣམ་གོང་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the right of</td>
<td>རྣམ་</td>
<td>People's Park is on the right of the fruit shop.</td>
<td>རྣམ་གོང་འོད་གསུང་བོད་ལོར་</td>
<td>འགོད་པ་ལོ་ོས་དཔེར་ོས་དཔེར་</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 9 Find the right place

Dialogue

1 A: Excuse me, is there a post office near here? B: Yes, there is. Walk along this road, and take the fourth turn on the left.
A: Thank you very much.
B: Not at all. / You're welcome.

2 A: Excuse me, is there a police-station near here? B: No, there isn't. The nearest is about 4 kilometres away. So you'd better catch a bus.
A: Which number do I need, please?
B: I think you need number two. The bus stop is along that road, on the right.
A: Thank you all the same.
B: I'm sorry I don't know. You'd better ask that policeman over there.

3 A: Excuse me, is there a toilet near here? B: I'm sorry I don't know. You'd better ask that policeman over there.
A: Thank you all the same.

Grammar

1 Expressing needs

1a He needs some help. (He requests help.)
1b You need Bus Number 47. ឈ្មោះកាល់សុំរបស់យើងគឺ លុំ១៣ រ៉េស៊ីណាហសីដ្លី។
1c What is the number of the bus I need? ឈ្មោះកាល់សុំរបស់យើងគឺ លុំ១៣ រ៉េស៊ីណាហសីដ្លី។

2 Asking for directions ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍
2a Is there a station near here? មានឈ្នះដែលនៅទើបនេះទេ? ស្ថាបាលដែលនៅទើបនេះទេ?
2b Where's the nearest hospital, please? កំណាព្យកiahប្រជាជនស្រីបែនបែតបែរបស់យើង?

3 Giving directions ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍
3a Go along this road. សូងស្តង់មកប្រយោជនៈនេះ
3b Take the first right turn. ទុំធប់ទីមួយឆ្លងខាងឆ្លងេះ
3c It's outside / next to / in front of... កំហុស / ជាមួយ / ក្នុង... ការណ៍កូនសីដ្លី
3d It's about a hundred meters on the left. កំហុស ១០០ម៉ែត្តនៅខាងឆ្លងេះ
3e It's about six kilometres away. កំហុស ៦គីឡូម៉ែត្តដូចជាតិ

4 Practice how to make sentences with these phrases. ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍
look for ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ She's looking for a job. ឈ្មោះកាល់សុំរបស់យើងគឺ លុំ១២ រ៉េស៊ីណាហសីដ្លី។
look at ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ Meduk looks at her reading book. ស្ថាបាលដែលនៅទើបនេះ
look after ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ Children have to look after their parents when they are aged.
look out of ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ In the morning, I often look out of the window to see the sun.
look like ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ His nose looks like a bird flying.
look the same ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ They look the same.
look worried ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ She looks very worried about her study.
look over ស្នេហារឡើងការណ៍ The teacher looked over the students' homework.
Unit 10 Home and Work

Lesson 39 John's Day

John is Canadian. He lives in a tall building in the city of Toronto. There are eighteen floors in the building, and he lives on the fifteenth floor. He uses a lift to go up and down.

John works very hard. He goes to work early. Every day he leaves his home and walks to the lift. He gets into the lift. It takes him down to the first floor.

He gets out of the lift. Then he walks to a bus stop. The bus stop is in front of a station. It is about two hundred metres from his home.

Usually, he catches the number 11 bus to work, but sometimes he goes by train. John works in a factory about ten kilometres from his home. His work starts at half past eight, and finishes at a quarter to five. He gets back home at a quarter past five. He gets into the lift, and goes up to the twelfth floor. Then he gets out of the lift and climbs up to the fifteenth floor on foot.

Every day he does the same thing. Why doesn't he use the lift for the last three floors?

Translation of Lesson 39

Lesson 39 John's Day

John is Canadian. He lives in a tall building in the city of Toronto. There are eighteen floors in the building, and he lives on the fifteenth floor. He uses a lift to go up and down.

John works very hard. He goes to work early. Every day he leaves his home and walks to the lift. He gets into the lift. It takes him down to the first floor.

He gets out of the lift. Then he walks to a bus stop. The bus stop is in front of a station. It is about two hundred metres from his home.

Usually, he catches the number 11 bus to work, but sometimes he goes by train. John works in a factory about ten kilometres from his home. His work starts at half past eight, and finishes at a quarter to five. He gets back home at a quarter past five. He gets into the lift, and goes up to the twelfth floor. Then he gets out of the lift and climbs up to the fifteenth floor on foot.

Every day he does the same thing. Why doesn't he use the lift for the last three floors?
Grammar

1 Does she like her work?
   Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.
1b Do you live in Ziling?
   Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
1c I don't like living on the 12th floor.
1d He doesn't use a computer.

2 What does she / he do?
2a She / He is a worker.
2b He / She studies Tibetan.
2c I am / You are a teacher.
2d I write. / You play.
Unit 11 Keep healthy

Dialogue

Teacher: Good morning, students.

Students: Good morning, Teacher.

Teacher: What day is it today?

Students: Today is Monday, November the twelfth.

Teacher: Who is away today?

Students: Lodan is away today.

Teacher: What's wrong with him?

Students: He is a little ill today.

Teacher: Could you give him a message?

Students: Yes, sure.

Teacher: I hope he will be better soon.

Grammar

The Past Indefinite Tense

"am/is-was are-were"
### Unit 12 Which is your favourite?

**Dialogue**

1 A: Which is your favourite month?

   B: I think May is the best month.

2 A: How many minutes are there in an hour?

   B: There are sixty minutes in an hour.

3 A: What day was yesterday?

   B: It was Wednesday, October 13th (thirteenth), 2000 (two thousand).

### Grammar

**The Past Indefinite**

- इहिंन "have" दे "has" इहिंन "had" दे

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement forms</th>
<th>I / you / she / he / we / they had a good time on Sunday.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question forms</td>
<td>Did I / you / she / we / they have eggs for breakfast?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answer forms</td>
<td>Yes, I / you / she / we / they had eggs for breakfast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No, I / you / she / we / they had eggs for breakfast.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 13 Where were you born?

Dialogue

Dongrub: Hello, Meduk! May I ask you some questions? Meduk: Certainly!

Dongrub: When were you born? Meduk: I was born on February 16,1986.

Dongrub: Where were you born? Meduk: I was born in Tibet--in a small town near Lhasa.

Dongrub: How long did you live there? Meduk: We lived there for about five years.

Dongrub: Only five years? Meduk: Yes. Then my family moved to Amdo.

Dongrub: Why did you move there? Meduk: Because my father found work in Ziling.

Dongrub: Are you enjoying living there? Meduk: Yes, we are. Very much.

Lesson 51 Wei Hua's busy day

Wei Hua had a busy day yesterday. She got up before 7 o'clock in the morning, and quickly washed her hands and face. She got to school early. She had a little rest after lunch, but she worked hard in class all day. She played basketball after school, and then walked home.

Wei Hua's pen was broken, so she needed a new one. On her way home she bought a new pen at a shop. When she reached home, she had a short rest and a glass of water. After that she helped her parents. She quickly cooked the supper, and cleaned the house.

She watched TV for half an hour after supper. Then she started her homework. She finished it at half past nine. She went to bed before a quarter to ten.

I asked Wei Hua this question: "Do you enjoy work?"
"Yes, I do," she answered. "I like to keep busy!"
Translation of Lesson 51

Translation of Lesson 51
Unit 14 Mainly revision

Dialogue

A: I want to buy some mutton. How much does it cost, please?

B: Eight yuan for a kilo.

A: That's too much / too expensive / dear. / That's quite cheap / inexpensive. Give me a kilo of mutton please.

Opposites

2a A: What is the opposite of "close"?

B: The opposite of "close" is "open."

2b A: What is the opposite of "interesting"?

B: The opposite of "interesting" is "uninteresting."

A short conversation in the bus.

Conductor: Tickets, please. May I see your ticket please, madam?

Lady: Certainly. Here it is.

Conductor: Thank you, madam. Now, may I see yours, sir?

Man: I'm sorry, I can't find it. I thought it was in my coat.

Conductor: Did you buy one, sir?

Man: Oh, yes, I bought one, but I can't find it now.

Conductor: I hope you can find it. I'm coming back in a minute.
Unit 15 Thanks for the message

Useful Expressions

1. He is out at the moment. 
2. Please ring him. 
3. Can I take a message? 
4. See you tomorrow. 
5. I don't think so. 

Text Explanation

1. Zhaxi, could you answer the telephone, please? 

1a. Could I have a cup of butter tea, Mum? 

1b. Could you give me that Tibetan-English dictionary, please? 

2. I'll get it. (I will answer the telephone.) 

"It" here means "the telephone." 

3. He is at the cinema. 

3a. He is at school / work / home. 

4. Can I take a message? 

4a. Cairang asked me to take a message for you. 

5. The monitor asked you to sweep the floor. 

5a. The teacher asked Dorji not to talk in class. 

6. A: Thank you for inviting me to your birthday party. 

B: It's a pleasure.
6a A. Thank you for answering my question. ฉันขอบคุณที่ได้ตอบคำถามของฉัน
B: It's a pleasure. ดีค่ะ ดีใจมากค่ะ

7 A: Do you remember we went to work on a farm last summer? คุณจำได้ไหมว่าเราไปทำงานอยู่ในไร่ที่ผ่านมา
Yes, I do. ใช่ค่ะ.

8 There were many apples on the trees. มีแอปเปิ้ลมากมายอยู่ในต้นไม้
8a There is a sparrow in the tree. มีหูกีนอยู่ในต้นไม้
8b There is a nice Tibetan knife in the box. มีมีดติเบตแนวที่สวยงามอยู่ในกล่อง

9 They needed to climb up the trees with ladders. พวกเขาต้องปั่นขึ้นไปบนต้นไม้ด้วยลิขิต
9a They needed to visit Tibetan areas with Tibetans. พวกเขาต้องไปเยี่ยมที่พื้นที่ติเบ็ตด้วยชาวติเบ็ต
9b They needed to kill the wolf with a gun. พวกเขาต้องยิงหมาหม้อด้วยปืน

Grammar วิเคราะห์ประโยคภาษาอังกฤษ:
"There be (was were)" หมายถึง "มีอยู่" ทุกกรณี "was" และ "were" ใช้กับ "is" และ "are" ตามแก่นของประโยคภาษาอังกฤษ ดังนี้

1a There was a meeting yesterday. เจ้านายเรียกประชุมเมื่อวานค่ะ
1b There was a Tibetan horse-race last summer. ติเบ็ตมีการแข่งขันม้าที่ผ่านมา
1c There were many customers at the Tibetan restaurant yesterday. ชาวติเบ็ตเดินทางมาที่ร้านอาหารติเบ็ตเมื่อวานค่ะ
1d There were many nice flowers on the Gangcha grasslands last summer. ที่ทุ่งนาปากิน ซึ่งเป็นที่ตั้งของทุ่งหญ้าที่มีความงามอยู่ในฤดูร้อนที่ผ่านมา

105
Unit 16 The seasons of the year

Useful Expressions

1 It's very cold today, isn't it? 
   1a You are from Tibet, aren't you?

2 It's very nice, isn't it? 
   2a Zhaxi is an English teacher, isn't he?
   2b Huadan is a herdsman, isn't he?

Text Explanation

1 Everything begins to grow in spring. 
   1a Are the flowers beautiful in winter? 
   1b Are horses strong and fat in autumn in Qinghai?

2 Winter is from about November to January. 
   2a I read Tibetan from seven to eight every morning. 
   2b It's far from Beijing to Tibet.

3 Why don't you take off your sweater? 
   3a Why don't you herd livestock in the mountains? 
   3b Why don't you want to go to Lhasa with Cairang?

4 It's very different from Australia at this time of year.
4a City life is very different from countryside life. 城市生活与乡村生活大不相同。

4b This horse is different from that one. 这匹马和那匹不一样。

5 Look at this letter from Meduk to her friend. 看这封Meduk给她的朋友的信。

5a I want to travel from Qinghai to other Tibetan places. 我想从青海到其他藏族地区。

5b This river flows from India to Nepal. 这条河从印度流到尼泊尔。

6 Thank you for your letter. 谢谢你的信。

6a Thank you for coming to see me. 谢谢来看我。

6b Thank you for your help. 谢谢你的帮助。

7 The weather gets warmer and the days get longer in spring. 春天天气变暖，白天变长。

7a He gets fatter and she gets thinner every year. 他每年都变得越来越胖，她越来越瘦。

7b The population of Sichuan gets larger and the farmland gets smaller. 四川的人口增加，耕地减少。

8 Summer comes after spring. 夏天在春天之后。

8a Autumn comes after summer. 秋天在夏天之后。

9 I often go swimming / skating / fishing. 我经常游泳 / 滑冰 / 钓鱼。

9a I often go home in the evening. 我经常晚上回家。

9b She often goes to a temple to worship. 她经常去庙里祈祷。

10 The coldest season of the year is winter. 一年中最冷的季节是冬天。

10a Qinghai Lake is the biggest lake in Central Asia. 青海湖是中亚最大的湖。

10b Musk is the most expensive product in Mahdo County. 麝香是Mahdo县最昂贵的产品。
11 Which season do you like best--spring, summer, autumn, or winter? 

11a My mother gets up earliest in my family.

11b I like Tibetan songs best.

12 I like summer better than spring.

12a I prefer autumn to winter.

12b She likes Cairang better than Zhaxi.

Grammar

1a You are coming to see her, aren't you? 

1b She prefers English to Tibetan, doesn't she?

1c Your father goes to herd livestock very early, doesn't he?

1d The grassland is very beautiful in the morning, isn't it?

1e You're not a Tibetan student, are you?
Unit 17 What's the weather like today?

Useful Expressions

1 What is the weather like today? It's going to be / get warmer. It's sunny / cloudy / rainy / windy / snowy. It's going to be / get warmer later on.

2 What's the date today?

3 What a cold day!

Text Explanation

1 The wind is blowing strongly. The sun is shining brightly. It's raining heavily. He's suffering terribly.

2 It's going to be warmer later on. You will find Dondrup a good student later on. The yaks are not fat, but they will be fatter later on.

3 The best time to come to China is in spring or autumn. The most interesting way to go to Lhasa is walking on foot. The best student in my class is Huadan.

4 I don't like winter because there is too much snow and ice.
4a I like spring best because there're many beautiful flowers. 

4b He's late because he got up late.

4c I love summer because I like swimming.

5 You need to wear lots of warm clothes.

5a You don't need to come if you feel sick.

5b You don't need to herd livestock if it snows.

6 The seasons of the year in Britain and the USA are nearly the same.

6a The landscapes in Tibet and Qinghai are nearly the same.

6b His answer and mine are the same.

Grammar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sun झिम्मा</td>
<td>sunny झिम्मा/अवी</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives</td>
<td>Adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick កក្រុមសម្រាប់</td>
<td>quickly កក្រុមសម្រាប់</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy ឥសុីអភិល័យ</td>
<td>heavily ឥសុីអភិល័យ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bright កក្រុមសម្រាប់</td>
<td>brightly កក្រុមសម្រាប់</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful ឥសុីអភិល័យ</td>
<td>carefully ឥសុីអភិល័យ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy កក្រុមសម្រាប់</td>
<td>happily កក្រុមសម្រាប់</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usual តុលិច</td>
<td>usually តុលិច</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strong ប្រាហ់</td>
<td>strongly ប្រាហ់</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

111
Unit 18 Come to the party!

Useful Expressions

1 Thank you very much for asking me to the party. ཞེས་ཐོབ་པོ་བཤིང་། གཞན་ཐོབ།
2 Happy birthday! རྟོལ་བརྩོག་བྱེད།
3 Here is your present. ངདོ་དེ་འདུས་བཞིོ།་བཞིོ།།
4 I'm sure he would love to come. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་བྱེད། རྣམ་ཐོབ།།

Text Explanation

1 I'm going to have a party. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་བྱེད།།
2 I'm going to have breakfast / lunch / supper. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་/ རུྟུར་/ རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
3 I'm going to water my horse. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
4 A: Would you like to come? རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
   B: Sure. I would love to come. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
4a A: Would you like more tsamba. བརྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
   B: No, thanks. I'm full. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
5 I'm sorry I'm late. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
5a I'm sorry to hear that your mother was ill. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
5b I'm sorry you can't go there with Tibetan students. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
6 Everything was ready. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
6a Zhaxi, is dinner ready? I'm hungry. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
6b Is your family ready for the New Year? རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
7 All the food was on the table. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
7a All the female yaks are in the shed. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
7b All the apples are in the fridge. རྟོལ་བརྩོག་ལྕགས།།
8 Oncu felt very happy.

8a The grassland is very big.

8b Zhaxi looks like his father.

9 Cairang ran to the door and found Dorji outside.

9a Look! Some boys are playing football outside.

9b Let's meet outside the school.

10 Can I have a look at your picture?

10a You can come later than you did yesterday.

10b You can't herd sheep in the early morning, you can herd them later.

11 There is no time.

11a I have no money with me today.

11b I have no time to go there with you.

12 She wears a beautiful flower in her hair.

12a Meduk wears a warm Tibetan robe.

13 May I have some dry yak meat?

13a May I come?

13b May I take this book to my home?

13c May I have another bowl of yoghurt, please?

Grammar

Using "would like".

1 I am thirsty. I would like a bottle of water.

1a I am thirsty. I would like a bottle of water.
"Would like" is similar to "want" but conveys a stronger desire.

1c He would like some tea.
1d She would like some tea.

"Would like" is similar to "will" in terms of expressing a desire.

1f I'd / she'd / he'd / they'd / we'd like a glass of tea.
1g I would like some tea.
1h He would like some tea.
1i You would like some tea.
1j Would you like some milk tea?
1k Would he like some milk tea?
1l Would she like some milk tea?

2 "Would like" is more specific in expressing a desire compared to "will." It indicates a strong inclination.

2a Would you like to go to Lhasa? I would love to go.
2b I would love to go. Sorry, I'm afraid I wouldn't.
2c A: Would you like to come to my birthday party? B: Sure. I would love to come.
2d A: Would you like to come to have dinner with me? B: Sorry. I'm afraid I wouldn't.
Unit 19 A weather report

Useful Expressions

1 It will get better soon. সূর্যাদি আসবে চিরকালের মতো ফণ্ডেনি আসবেনি
2 Will it last long? এটি কি লম্বা সময় ধরে ব্যবহৃত হবে?
3 Don't say that before you look at the picture. ছবিটাকে দেখে দেখে তাকে বলুন না
4 Nice to see you. আমি আপনাকে দেখতে দুঃখ করে जाने
5 I know why you came. আমি জানি আপনি কেন এলেন
6 What bad weather! ব্যথা প্রকাশ করা সময়

Text Explanation

1 The radio says the sun will come out later. সূর্যাদি আমাদের ফণ্ডেনি আসবে এখন আপনি
1a The moon has come out. মুনার আসবেনি
1b I don’t think the marmot will come out of its hole today because there is a big dog sniffing outside the hole. একো বড় মুকুট দিয়ে আসছে বড় আড়াল চিতোর হলে, একো বড় মুকুট দিয়ে আসছে বড় আড়াল চিতোর হলে

2 The radio says the clouds will lift quite quickly. বায়ু আমাদের ফণ্ডেনি আসবে এখন আপনি
2a The old man says the weather will be nice soon. ধীরে ধীরে সূর্যাদি আসবে এখন আপনি
2b The radio says it's going to be windy tomorrow. সূর্যাদি আমাদের ফণ্ডেনি আসবে এখন আপনি

3 Our TV set was broken last week. টিভিআপনি সুরে আসবে এখন আপনি
3a I don't know the time, because my watch is broken. একো বড় মুকুট দিয়ে আসছে বড় আড়াল চিতোর হলে, একো বড় মুকুট দিয়ে আসছে বড় আড়াল চিতোর হলে
3b He didn't do morning exercise because his leg is broken.

4 It'll take only ten minutes to walk there.
   4a It's easier to say than to do.
   4b It's important to learn English well.

5 I know why you came.
   5a I didn't know you were here.
   5b I don't know why Zhaxi dislikes watching TV.

6 You want to get your TV set back, don't you?
   6a Your parents go to herd livestock early every morning, don't they?
   6b You don't know what this word means, do you?

7 I finished my homework before I went home.
   7a You must wash your hands before you eat.
   7b I got up yesterday before the sun rose.

8 Let's go for a walk.
   8a I usually go out for a walk after supper.
   8b Let's go home. Let's go to the park.

9 We'll wait for you outside the school gate.
   9a Please go first, I have to wait for Cairang.
   9b Meduk, your friend is waiting for you outside.
10 The day after tomorrow will be Sunday.  ཤེས་རབ་ཐོན་ཞེས་བ་བོ།
10a It was Teachers' Day yesterday.  རྩ་ཤིས་ཐོན་ཞེས་ཐོན་ཞེས་བོ།
10b It'll be rainy tomorrow.  འབྲེལ་ཐོན་བ་བོ།

11 There will be an English test next week.  ཤེས་རབ་ཐོན་ཞེས་བའི་ལྷུན་བཞིན་བཞིན་ཐོན་བོ།
11a There will be snow tonight in Qinghai.  ཤེས་རབ་ཐོན་ཞེས་བའི་སྤྱི་ཐོན་བཞིན་ཐོན་ཞེས་བོ།
11b There will be a meeting this afternoon.  རོ་ཁ་འཇིག་ཐོན་ཞེས་བོ།

Grammar རྒྱུན་དོན་དཀར་གཡུང་།
Using "Will" || "Will"འཕོ་བཟོད་ནས།

1 "Will"འཇིག་ཐོན་བཞིན་གྱི་འཇིག་ཐོན་བཞིན་དཀར་གཡུང་།
1a They will go to Lhasa next year.  ཤེས་རབ་འཇིག་ཐོན་བཞིན་ལྷས་ཐོན་བཞིན་ཐོན་ཞེས་བོ།
1b He will have a party tonight.  རང་འཇིག་ཐོན་ཞེས་བཞིན་ཐོན་ཞེས་བོ།

2 "Will"འཇིག་ཐོན་"+to eat""ནང་ཐོན་ཞེས་བཞིན་ཀུན་ཅིང་གྱི་དཀར་གཡུང་།
2a She will come back three weeks later.  (བཟོད།) ཤེས་རབ་འཇིག་ཐོན་ཞེས་བཞིན་ཀུན་ཅིང་བཞིན་ཐོན་ཞེས་བོ།
2b I will to go to school tomorrow.  (ཟར།)

3 "Will"འཇིག་ཐོན་འཇིག་ཐོན་ཞེས་པ་དད་ཐོན་ཞེས་པ་དད་ཐོན་ཞེས་བོ།
I'll, she'll, he'll, they'll, we'll, you'll.

5 "Will"འཇིག་ཐོན་"will not=won't"འཕོ།
5a They will hold a sports meeting the day after tomorrow.  ཤེས་རབ་འཇིག་ཐོན་ཞེས་བའི་ལྷུན་བཞིན་བཞིན་བཞིན་ཐོན་ཞེས་བོ།
5b We won't leave before nine.  རོ་ཁ་འཇིག་ཐོན་ཞེས་བཞིན་ཐོན་ཞེས་བོ།
Unit 20 What do English people eat?

Useful Expressions

1 I have no idea.
2 It's my favourite.
3 Could you pass me the salt, please?
4 In England, people eat fish and chips.
5 In Tibetan places, people eat *tsamba* and meat.

Text Explanation

1 Cairang's coming tonight.
1a Look! The bus is coming.
1b I'm going to Lhasa on Monday.

2 You must help me do the cooking this afternoon.
2a Can you help me move the heavy box?
2b Zhaxi often helps his parents do the housework.

3 It's my favourite.
3a *Tsamba* is my favourite food.
3b Dorri is my favourite Tibetan singer.

4 Let's give her something different to eat.
4a I have a few words to say on this question.
4b Stop talking, I have something important to tell you.
5 A: Would you like a cup of tea? 
B: Yes, please.

5a A: Would you like a glass of milk?
B: No, I'd like some water.

5b A: Would you like something to drink?
B: No, thanks.

6 It must be more delicious!

6a He must be right.

6b I must go to the train station.

7 Please give me a ring after you talk to your parents.

7a Please write a letter to me after you arrive in America.

7b He asked me to bring some butter when I come to school.

Grammar

1 Which is the most delicious, beef, mutton, or tsamba?

2 A tiger is more dangerous than a cat.

3 Which is more popular, horse-racing or yak-racing?

4 Zhaxi is taller than Cairang.

5 You have much more ability in written Tibetan than I do.
Unit 21 Mainly revision

Useful Expressions

1. What can I do for you?  འཇག་གཅིག་བསྡུས་བཏོན་བསྐད་དོ།
2. I need to do some shopping.  བསོ། བཏོན་བསྐད་དོ།
3. The children played happily in the park.  མིག་དངོས་སྟོད་གཅིག་བསྡུས་བཏོན་བསྐད་དོ།
3a. I made some dumplings last night.  གྷྲ་བཅུག་བྱེད་བྱེད་ལོག་གུ་བསྐད་དོ།
4. Do it carefully, don't be nervous!  གཟིང་བར་བྱེད་པ་དེ་དེབ་གནུབ་དོན་བསྐད་དོ།

Text Explanation

1. She wanted to get ready for the party.  དགོང་དཔོན་དེ་བཞིན་འཁོར་བྱས་བཤེད་དོ།
1a. Doma's mother is getting ready for the temple meeting.  ཁྲུང་གིས་ལྡེ་བཞིན་འཁོར་བྱས་མཐོང་འཁོར་བྱས་བཤེད་དོ།
1b. The herdsmen are getting ready for the New Year.  ཁྲུང་གིས་ལྡེ་བཞིན་འཁོར་བྱས་བཤེད་དོ།

2. Not everyone likes chicken.  སྐྱེལ་བའི་དྲེ་བཞིན་བདག་བརྙན་པས་དོ།
2a. Not every student can answer the question.  ཁྲུང་གིས་ལྡེ་བཞིན་འཁོར་བྱས་མཐོང་འཁོར་བྱས་བཤེད་དོ།
2b. Not everyone envies her.  ཁྲུང་གིས་ལྡེ་བཞིན་འཁོར་བྱས་བཤེད་དོ།

3. We'll need one more.  དགོང་དཔོན་དེ་བཞིན་འཁོར་བྱས་བཤེད་དོ།
3a. What delicious candy! I want one more piece.  འཇིག་གི་མང་དྲུག་ཅིག་པར་དེ་དེབ་གནུབ་དོན་བསྐད་དོ།

4. The students are cleaning the classroom. Some are sweeping the floor. The others are cleaning the windows and doors.  ཁྲུང་གིས་ལྡེ་བཞིན་འཁོར་བྱས་མཐོང་འཁོར་བྱས་བཤེད་དོ།
4a. Here are three pencils. One is red, another is blue, the third is yellow.  ཁྲུང་གིས་ལྡེ་བཞིན་འཁོར་བྱས་བཤེད་དོ།
4b My family has a large number of livestock that includes yaks, sheep, and horses.

Grammar གཤེར་བུ་བོད་སྒང་སུམ་བོད་ལེགས་པར་བོད།

1 How beautiful the garden is! ལྟེ་འོག་ལུས་ཕུལ་ཁུངས།
2 How delicious the food is! ལྟེ་འོག་ལུས་ཁུངས།
3 How well you sing! ལྟེ་འོག་ལུས་ཁུངས་ལའང་།
4 What a funny man he is! ལྟེ་འོག་ལུས་ཁུངས་ལའང་།
5 What an interesting film it is! ལྟེ་འོག་ལུས་ཁུངས་ལའང་།
6 What beautiful girls they are! ལྟེ་འོག་ལུས་ཁུངས་ལའང་།

121
Useful Expressions

1 Which is the way to the bus-station, please?
2 What's the matter?
3 Go down this street.
4 How can I get to the Yak Hotel?
5 What a kind girl!

Text Explanation

1 Excuse me, where is the Qinghai Hotel, please?
   1a Where is your home?
   1b How do you get home?
   1c Where do your parents live?

2 Go down this way until you reach the end.
   2a They reached Lhasa two weeks ago.
   2b You must wait until I come back.
   2c A: When will you get to Qinghai Lake? B: I'll get there tomorrow.

3 The address was on a piece of paper, but I can't find it now.
   3a Zhaxi found Lhamo's watch, so she thanked him.
   3b I looked for my watch everywhere, but I couldn't find it.
4 It'll take you half an hour. ฉันจะเป็นพ่อไปรษณีย์ที่น่าจะต้องการเวลา
4a. How long does it take you to go to school? ฉันจะเป็นพ่อไปรษณีย์ที่น่าจะต้องการเวลา
4b It takes me twenty minutes. ฉันจะเป็นพ่อไปรษณีย์ที่น่าจะต้องการเวลา

5 It may be in your inside pocket. ของมันอยู่ในกระเป๋าในตัวของคุณ
5a Let's ask that old man. He may know. ไปถามคนเก่าคนนี้. เขาอาจจะรู้
5b He goes to work on foot. So do I. เขาไปทำงานด้วยเท้า. ฉันก็ด้วย

Grammar คำว่า "may"

Using "may." || "may"คำว่า "may"

1 "ต้องหมายหมุน+may+ต้องหมายหมุน" ต้องหมายหมุน+may+ต้องหมายหมุน
1a I may go herding tomorrow? ฉันจะไปเลี้ยงผ้าไหมได้ในวันพรุ่งนี้หรือ
ต้องหมายหมุน+may+not+ต้องหมายหมุน
2b I may not go herding tomorrow.

2 "May"ต้องหมายหมุน+may+ต้องหมายหมุน
2a May I come in? ฉันจะเข้ามาได้เหรอ
2b May I borrow your pen? ฉันจะ��ieranหนึ่งกบ
2c May I have a look at the picture? ฉันจะเห็นรูปภาพเหรอ

3 "May" ต้องหมายหมุน+may+ต้องหมายหมุน
Unit 23 You mustn't play on the road

Useful Expressions

1. You mustn't eat anything before the blood test.
2. If you don't go soon, you'll be late.
3. You must wait for your turn.
4. If you aren't careful, a car may hit you.

Text Explanation

1. You must be careful.
   a. Must I finish my homework before supper?
   b. Must Zhaxi clean the classroom before class?

2. If you study hard, you may pass the exam.
   a. If you get up late, you will be late for school.
   b. If you do that again, you will be sorry.

3. It's too dangerous to go there.
   a. I'm too busy to write to you often.
   b. It's too hard to move this big box.

4. At the head of the queue was an old man.
   a. She is short, so she is standing at the head of the queue.
   b. My home is near Lhasa City.
5 Everyone laughed at the woman's mistake. 

5a Don't laugh at others when they are in trouble. 

5b He was laughed at by his friends. 

6 You mustn't eat anything until you see a doctor. 

6a He didn't go to bed until 9 o'clock. 

6b I won't understand it until you explain it to me. 

Grammar འབུར་བརྡ་དགུ་དང་།

Using "must." || "must" བོད་ཀྱི་ལོ་རོ།

"must" འབུར་བརྡ་དགུ་དང་། བོད་ཀྱི་ལོ་རོ།

1 སྤེལ་བོ། དེ་དེ

2 སྤེལ་བོ། དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ་དེ

2a You must buy a ticket. 

2b You must go now. 

2c If you are ill, you must go to see the doctor.
Unit 24 What do you have to do?

Useful Expressions

1. I have to look after the baby.
2. She will come if she can.
4. I often feel tired.
5. If you do that, you'll soon feel much healthier.

Text Explanation

1. I have to tidy my room.
   1a) We have to get up early tomorrow.
   1b) I have to do my homework at this moment.
   1c) My mother is ill so I have to look after her at home.

2. Every time I do housework, I feel tired.
   2a) Every time I catch a cold, I have headaches.
   2b) Every time I go to the temple, I smell burning incense.

3. If I work in the garden, I have to sit down and rest every five minutes.
   3a) There is a bus stop every two kilometres.
   3b) Uncle Dorji goes to the temple every day.

126
What do you mean? 我們因為長的像所以被誤會了

4a I mean you eat too much food, and you don’t exercise enough. 我的意思是, 你吃的太多, 並且不夠運動。

4b I mean I can't come here so early. 我的意思是我不能這麼早來這裡。

I will go instead of you. 我會代替你去。

5a We'll go to the temple instead of going to the park. 我們會去廟裡而不是去公園。

5b Zhaxi gave Cumu a pen instead of a pencil. Zhaxi給Cumu一枝筆而不是一支鉛筆。

Grammar 我們因為長的像所以被誤會了

Using "have to." "Have to" 意思是 "必須"

"Have to" 意思是 "一定會" "must" 意思是 "需要" "should" "shouldn't" "needn't" "mustn't" "have to" "have..."

1 It's too late, I have to go home. 我必須回家。

2 He has to work for fourteen hours a day. 他必須工作十四個小時。

3 I lived very far from the school so I had to get up early. 我住在學校很遠的地方, 所以必須早起。

4 You have to come here on time. 你必須準時來這裡。
Unit 25 The visit to Monkey Island

Useful Expressions օծագրումներ

1 Can't you hear anything? դուք չսկասեք կայունություն եք չկասեք
2 Don't be afraid. չիթան հավատեք
3 It's time for our lunch. ժողովածու էր մրցանակ
4 Close the door. Keep the room warm. Փուրրակազմից իջևանան կայանը
5 Take it away! պատրաստել այն կերպից

Text Explanation ծանոթագրություն

1 Uncle Huadan said we could borrow his horse. Հուադան Հոուերը ասել երբեք կարողանան թարման կարծնակը
1a I'm going to borrow some English books from the library. Հուադան Հոուերը ասել երբեք կարողանան թարման կարծնակը
1b Don't lend the bike to others. Չտանձրեցնե ծանր կարծնակը

2 Shall I bring food for a picnic? ուր ես կտեսեն պանիթը պանիթը
2a Shall we go to your home? ուր ենք կանցկացրեն տունը եզնկակը
2b Shall we go to play football? ուր ենք կանցկացրեն գումարը գումարը
2c That’s a good idea. Let's go. Այս գուրերը ավելի ազուտը դեպառատը

3 We have never been there before. երբեք չենք եղել այդ կայսերականը
3a A: Have you ever been to Tibet? ուր ենք եղել ենք Չիբեք այս քարտաքանակը
   B: Yes, I have. ուր եղել ենք
   A: Where is Dorri? ուր եղել ենք Ա: Ուր եղել ենք
   B: He has gone to Kumbum Monastery. Սունը եղել ենք Խումբ Կումբու Մոնաստերի

4 Can't you hear anything? դուք չսկասեք կայունություն եք չկասեք
4a A: Do you have something to eat? դուք չսկասեք կայունություն եք չկասեք
128
B: Yes, but only a little bread.
A: Is there anybody in the dormitory-room?
B: No, there is nobody in the dormitory room.
A: Are there any Tibetans at the cinema?
B: Yes, there are some.

5 She started to run to the boat.
5a They began to have class.
5b Don't forget to bring your Tibetan notebook.

Grammar

1 It's important to learn English well.
2 They want to go out for a walk.
3 They went out to see what's happening.
4 Did you see her dance at the party?
Useful Expressions

1. She can do it all by herself.
2. He fell off the horse and he hurt himself.
3. She taught herself Tibetan.
4. He is very rich, so he can buy himself lots of good things.
5. He has much money.

Text Explanation

1. Could she swim when she was four years old?

   1a. I could ride a horse when I was eight years old.
   1b. I couldn't speak English one year ago, but now I can speak a little.

2. I hope she didn't hurt herself.

   2a. My left leg hurt this morning.
   2b. He jumped down from the roof and hurt his arm.

3. I don't enjoy myself very much.

   3a. A: I'm going to a birthday party tomorrow.
       B: Oh, good! Enjoy yourself.
   3b. I'm going to Tibet next week.
   3c. It's good news. Enjoy yourself.
4 His parents didn't know what was wrong. དེ་ཕྲག་བཞི་བཞིན་གནོད་ཞིག་ལ་ཞུར་བྱེད་པོ་

4a I want to know whose book it is. རྣམ་ཐོན་མི་དཔོན་པ་ཐེག་བཅོམ་བརྒྱབ་

4b Do you know how they go to Burma? རུང་ཐོན་ལ་དཔོན་པ་མི་ལ་ཐལ་མཐོ་བཞིན་བྱ་

5 She said it was going to be sunny tomorrow. དེ་ཐེ་དཔོན་པ་དེ་དེར་བཾང་རིང་རེར་བན་ཤེས་ཞིབ།

5a Huadan heard that there was a good doctor in a town not far away. བུ་དུན་དེ་ག་ཚིག་

6 Don't worry. I'll be OK. ཐེ་མེད་ཁྱེད་ཅིང་ཐག་སུང་ནོ།

Grammar ནགོ་བོ་དུས་དགོས་བྱའི་

"Can"ལཙ་ནང་བཟོད་ལ་ཅིག་བཅོམ་པ་ཡོང་། ལཙ་ནང་བཟོད་ལ་ཞུན་འབུར་འི་"ཉུར་བྱ་+can+དབུས་ཀྱི་བོར་བོར་པར་མོ"ལཙ་ནང་བཟོད་ལ་ཅིག་བཅོམ་པའི་"ཉུར་བྱ་+can+དཔོན་པ་མི་ལ་ཐལ་མཐོ་བཞིན་བྱ་

"Could"ལཙ་ནང་བཟོད་ལ་ཅིག་བཅོམ་པ་འི་"ཉུར་བྱ་+can+དཔོན་པ་མི་ལ་ཐལ་མཐོ་བཞིན་བྱ་

1 They can speak Tibetan very well. རེ་ཆིང་རབ་ཕུལ་བཞི་ཁོ་ཞི་བཟོད་སྐྱུན་བཟོད་

2 I can ride horses, but Cairang can't. བཞིན་ལ་བཅོམ། རུང་ལ་ཆུ་འཛིན་ཡི་མོ་

3 You can go now. ཤིང་ཕུང་བཞི་བཞིན་

4 Could you please close the door? ཤིང་ཕུང་བཞི་བཞིན་བྱ་བབ་

5 I can go to Gangcha County by myself. རུང་ཕུང་གཙོ་བསོད་བོད་དམེད་

6 You can get there by bus. ཤིང་ཕུང་བཞི་བཞིན་བཞིན་ལ་ཁོམ་བཞིན་

131
Unit 27 Ling Feng's diary

Useful Expressions

1. I can hear her singing in the room.
2. Let's go home.
3. It stopped raining.
4. The teacher asked us to stop talking.
5. I told him the whole story.
6. I nearly forgot!

Text Explanation

1. How did Zhaxi make the baby stop crying?
   a. I saw him playing on the playground.
   b. My classmates all went to People's Park.
2. At first she was asleep.
   a. At first we did not know each other, but now we're good friends.
   b. At first I didn't know how to ride a horse, but now I do it very well.
3. Half an hour later she woke up.
   a. Please wake me up at six thirty tomorrow morning.
   b. Wake up! It's time to go.
4. She looked at me and cried harder and harder.
   a. I looked at the blackboard, but I couldn't see anything.
   b. A: What are you looking for?
B: I'm looking for my watch, but I can't find it.

5 She stopped crying and listened to the music.
5a Did you finish reading the book?
5b They are listening to the teacher's lecture/talk.

6 After a few minutes she started to cry again.
6a When I go to Nepal for a holiday, will you please take care of my house?
6b She borrowed a few books from the library.

Grammar

Compound Sentences

1 You are a teacher and I am a teacher, too.
2 He worked very hard, but he did not pass the exam.
3 I went to see our teacher, but he wasn't at home.
4 I don't want to be late, so I get up very early every day.
Useful Expressions

1. Look into the river.
2. Look at my eyes.
3. She lost her pen at home.
4. Do you need any help?
5. I can't leave before nine.
6. Don’t be late for work.

Text Explanation

1. Why did you laugh in the end?
   1a. He won the game in the end.
   1b. He tried several times and at last he succeeded.

2. Every day he made one of the smaller animals bring him something to eat.

3. I'll speak to him.
   3a. Please speak loudly!
   3b. A: How can you guess I'm from Chamdo?
      B: The way you speak.

4. I never lie. / I never tell lies.
5 With these words the tiger jumped into the river.

5a We can walk with our legs and feet.

5b Zhaxi went shopping with Cairang.

6 I'd like to have a talk with you.

6a The teacher came into the classroom with some books in his hand.

6b With your help, I can finish the work in time.

Grammar

Past Simple.

 yesterday last week one minute ago
last year one hour ago last month
one day ago last night... one week ago...

My friend bought me a beautiful present.

We often heard her sing in the room.

We must keep the classroom clean and tidy.

We usually call him Cairang Dorji.
Unit 1 Teacher's Day

Useful Expressions ༡༢༩༩

1 Happy Teachers' Day!  ༡༢༩༩
2 Best wishes to you.  ༡༢༩༩
3 Glad to see you again.  ༡༢༩༩
4 Of course.  ༡༢༩༩
5 Zhacai is short for Zhaxi Cairang.  ༡༢༩༩

Grammar ༡༢༩༩

1 Present Simple.  ༡༢༩༩

1a What do you do?  ༡༢༩༩
1b What does the dog do?  ༡༢༩༩
1c I usually eat tsamba.  ༡༢༩༩
1d Where does she work?  ༡༢༩༩

2 Present Continuous.  ༡༢༩༩

2a A: What are you doing?  ༡༢༩༩
          B: I'm studying some new words.  ༡༢༩༩
2b We are learning English.  ༡༢༩༩
2c Lhamo is milking the yak.  ༡༢༩༩

3 Future Simple.  ༡༢༩༩

3a We are going to go school.  ༡༢༩༩
3b He will come later.  ༡༢༩༩
3c Will you ring him up this evening?  

3d They will not come to your home tomorrow.  

3e I shall milk the yak.  

3f We shall visit the museum.  

4 Past Simple.

4a I went to Qinghai Lake last week.  

4b Where did you go last Sunday?  

4c We had lunch at one o'clock.  

4d I finished my homework at nine thirty last night.  

Text Explanation  
1 Glad to see you.  

1a A: This is Dorji.  

B: How do you do? Glad to see you!  

Dorji: Glad to see you, too.  

1b T: Class, I am your new teacher. Pleased to meet you.  

S: Pleased to meet you, too.  

2 Did you have a good summer holiday?  

2a Danden will go back to Lhasa this summer holiday.  

3 How's Kate?  

3a I'm going to watch the game this afternoon, how about you?  

4 They are both fine.  

4a Both brothers are clever.  

4b She can both sing and dance.
4c They're both herdboys. སྟེགས་པའི་ཧཱུར་ཞེས

5 Everyone is going into the classroom. We'd better go, too. དེ་ལྡན་འོང་བཞིན་ཅན
5a It's too late, we'd better go home now. བོད་དེ་ངེས་པའི་ནི་ཐེ་དཔོན་བཤད་པའི་ནི་གྱི་ནི་མའི་འབུར་ོར་འགྲོག
5b It's too dark, you'd better not read. བློག་གཅོད་བཤད་དེ་དཔོན་དོན་དུ་བཞིན་དུ་ོར་ོག

6 Not one is away. འཛིན་པའི་གྲུབ་ཞེས
6a Everyone is here. ཡེ་ཐང་པ་ཞེས

7 Here are some beautiful flowers for you, with our best wishes. བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་གྲུབ་ཞེས་སོ། །

8 What beautiful flowers! བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་གྲུབ་ཞེས་སོ། །
8a What a good idea! བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་ལས་ཡོན་ཏན་སོ། །
8b How beautiful the grassland is! བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་ལས་ཡོན་ཏན་སོ། །

9 The students speak English when they have English lessons. རྣམ་སྣམ་གྲངས་ལས་ཡོན་ཏན་སོ། །
9a We have a Tibetan lesson today. བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་ལས་ཡོན་ཏན་སོ། །

10 Tomorrow I want you to give us a talk, Jim. བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ལེ་གོ་འདུས་ཀུན་གྲངས་ལས་ཡོན་ཏན་སོ། །
10a Tomorrow Mr Danba will give a talk in the meeting room. བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ལེ་གོ་འདུས་ཀུན་གྲངས་ལས་ཡོན་ཏན་སོ། །

11 There is nothing difficult about it. བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་གྲུབ་ཞེས
11a A: Why don't you ride your horse? བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་གྲུབ་ཞེས་སོ། །
               B: There is something wrong with it. བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་གྲུབ་ཞེས

12 What subject should I talk about? བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་གྲུབ་ཞེས
12a You should help her with the housework. བོད་དེ་ཁོ་བས་ཞེས་གྲུབ་ཞེས
The students are talking about the film.

Maybe I could talk about English names.

A: I don't know how to read this word.
B: You could go and ask the teacher.

Maybe I could talk about Tibetan food.

Do tell me.

Do study hard.

family name. རྣམ་

English name རྣམ་
full name རྣམ་
James (first / given name རྣམ་)
Allen (middle / given name རྣམ་)
Green (family name/ last name / surname རྣམ་)

What subject did Jim choose?

Lhomotso is choosing books in the library.

The people in the rooms below are very noisy.

A: What do you call this?
B: We call it "book."

He often makes telephone calls to me.

I'm going to give her a book. Maybe I will give her some flowers.
Unit 2 The sports meeting

Useful Expressions
Come on!
Well done!
Congratulations!
Bad luck.
Hold a meeting.
Right now.

Grammar
Comparison of adverbs
-er, -est.
tall    taller    tallest
hard    harder    hardest

1a He runs faster than you.
ln English it is more often in Shanghai than in Beijing.

2 late     later     latest
nice    nicer    nicest

2a He is the best student in our class.

3 "Big"-%"hot"-%"est"-%
big bigger biggest
hot hotter hottest

4 सांख्यिकीय विश्लेषण"-y"निःसूत"-y"-I"रूपसूती"+er"-%"+est"सूतीज
"consonants(सन्निहित) + y" → 'i + er, est.'
early earlier earliest
busy busier busiest

5 सांख्यिकीय विश्लेषण"more"-%"most"सूतीज
quickly more quickly most quickly
beautiful more beautiful most beautiful
good / well better best
many / much more most
far farther / further farthest / furthest

Text Explanation

1 Last week No. 14 Middle School held a sports meeting on the playground.
1a He's holding a book in his hand.
1b Cairang runs fastest of all.
1c Last week the Tibetan middle school held a sports meeting.

2 The building near our school is the tallest in our city.
2a The boy is climbing the tallest tree.

3 Huifang jumped quite far, but Ann jumped further.
3a Dorji jumped quite far, but Norbu jumped farther than him.

4 Bad / Good luck.
4a A: Did you go to the park last Sunday?  
B: No, I was ill and had to stay at home.  
A: Bad luck.  

4b A: Did you win?  
B: Yes, we are the first.  
A: Good luck.  

5 All the runners got ready to run.  
write--writer  
work--worker  
clean--cleaner  
read--reader  
play--player  
speak--speaker  

6 Everyone began to shout very loudly.  
6a Don't forget to close the door when you leave the room.  
6b It started to rain that night.  
6c My brother wants to learn English.  

7 …but not fast enough.  
7a Lhaben is strong enough to catch that wild yak.  
7b I don't have enough time to finish the work.  

8 Well done, everyone!  
8a Congratulations, Lhaben!  
9 Yu Yang and Jim were neck and neck.  

143
10 Lucy didn't do very well. She did rather badly. 

10a Danba rides very well.

10b Qiechung's mother was badly ill.

10c The train moves rather slowly.

11 It was difficult to see.

11a It is easy to say, but it is difficult to do.

11b It is important to think clearly before speaking.
Useful Expressions

1. It's quite a nice horse! toList
2. I'm sorry to trouble you. toList
3. hands up toList
4. agree with toList

Grammar

Comparison of the adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big</th>
<th>bigger</th>
<th>(the) biggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td>stronger</td>
<td>(the) strongest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>more dangerous</td>
<td>(the) most dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>important</td>
<td>more important</td>
<td>(the) most important</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Text Explanation

1. Do you like learning a foreign language? toList
   1a. The children like swimming in summer. toList
   1b. Gangcu liked to drink milk this morning. toList

2. In English "qu" makes a /kw/ sound. toList
   2a. The fridge makes a strange sound. toList

3. It's another way of saying "fast." toList
   3a. Another way of saying "bicycle" is "bike." toList

4. Will you please say it again more slowly? toList
5 Hands up, please! हाथ ऊँचाइए।

6 What do you mean by...? ऐसा क्या कहते हैं?

7 I see. Thanks. माननी है। धन्यवाद।

8 Miss Zhao is one of the most popular teachers in the school. सीयजी चाओ श्रमावर्ती विद्यालय के मध्य सबसे लोकप्रिय शिक्षक मध्यस्त के रूप में है।
8a This is one of the most important books about science. यह शास्त्र विज्ञान के लिए एक सबसे महत्वपूर्ण पुस्तक है।
8b The Yangtze River is one of the longest rivers in the world. यांगजात्से नदी, सबसे लंबी नदियों में से एक है।

9 Yesterday morning she came into class as usual. अगस्त में उसने अपने शास्त्रेस ही सामान्य नमूना आये।
9a Today the classroom is as clean as usual. आज का कक्षा ही सामान्य नमूना साफ है।

10 There was a big smile on her face. उसके विशाल हास्य की उजाड़ है।
10a Doma smiled after she knew she was the first. आज वो जानने में हुई थी आपके समीक्षा।

11 I'm afraid some people forgot to sweep the floor. माफी मे होते ही धूप का काम करने का।

12 There was no excuse. ऐसा का कोई कारण नहीं।
12a If you don't finish your homework, you can't find any excuse. अगर आपका परिश्रम अनि अन्य का कोई कारण है।

13 Everyone is at school today except Lin Tao. सबसे आज स्कूल में आए हैं। लिं ताओ नहीं।
13a We all eat mutton except Lhamo. जबकि हम सब मुटन खाते हैं। ल्हामो नहीं।

146
14 Luckily the weather last week was not as wet as it is today. तुम्हारी रात्रि कालीसागर जलक्षुद्ध हुई?

15 It's time for us to start the lesson now. नेय्जल्ला लेख्ने तारामहिलाई तारामहिलाई

16 I think foreign languages are more interesting than science. राष्ट्रिय भाषा मराठीमध्ये मराठीमध्ये

17 I really can't agree with you. केल्याची मी तुमच्यासोबत र्यांना समाधान नाही.

18 I prefer science. (माणसाचे अंदाजे) आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि.

18a A: Which do you prefer, apples or pears? आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि.

B: I prefer apples to pears. आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि.

19 I think Chinese is less difficult than English. तुम्हाला चीनीच्या भाषेच्या बजारीत तुमच्या बजारीत.

20 I would like to drop maths. I find it very difficult. आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि.

20a I would like to stop herding. I find it very difficult. आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि आणि.
Unit 4 What were they doing?

Useful Expressions

1 I'm sorry to trouble you.
2 It's quite a nice ....
3 Be angry with.
4 Get back.
5 Fall asleep.
6 Help… with.

Grammar

Past Continuous

1 I / He / She was studying.
2 We / You / They were studying.
   2a A: What were you doing this time yesterday?  
      B: I was milking the goats.
   2b Cairang was doing homework when his mother came home.
   2c The students were playing football at four o'clock yesterday afternoon.

Text Explanation

1 I am trying to draw a horse.
   1a I'm trying to milk the goat.
2 It's quite a nice horse! / What a nice horse it is!
3 Don't play with fire. It's very dangerous.
4 What was Lily drawing when the teacher came in?
5 He lived in a tall building in the city of Moscow.
Every night the man upstairs came home late.

He always took off his shoes and threw them on the floor.

It's warm in the room, you'd better take off your coat.

The plane will take off at ten in the morning.

It's very difficult to get to sleep.

They got to the park at nine yesterday morning.

The noise wakes me up!

Don't make a lot of noise.

Would you please not do this?

I am looking at the blackboard, but I can't see anything.

In class, the students must listen to the teacher carefully.

Last night Dorji went to bed at nine, but he went to sleep at ten.
Unit 5 The accident

Useful Expressions

1 You'd better not talk. 你应该不要说话。
2 Go as quickly as you can. 尽快走。
3 Don't crowd round him. 不要挤在一起。
4 It's nice of you. 你真好。
5 Hurry up. 快点。

Text Explanation

1 Were you washing clothes last night? 你昨晚在洗衣服了吗？
   1a Was Mom making a dress last night? 你妈妈昨晚在做衣服吗？

2 Get up and dress quickly. 起床并快点穿衣服。
   2a He put on his coat and went out. 他穿上外套并出去。

3 Today he wears a blue coat. 他今天穿蓝色的外套。
   3a Who's the man in the brown jacket? 穿棕色外套的男人是谁？

4 You look tired today. 你今天看起来很累。
   4a He doesn't look happy. 他看上去不高兴。
   4b Can you tell me why? 你能告诉我为什么吗？
   4c Mr Zhaxi looks very young. 珠克希看起来很年轻。

5 I had a little accident last Sunday. 上周日我出了一个小事故。
   5a There have been many traffic accidents this year. 这年有很多交通事故。

6 What happened? 发生什么了？
7 The children were leaving school on Tuesday when they saw a truck. 

8 It's nothing, don't worry. You'll be OK. 

9 I'm watching him draw the picture. 

10 As quickly as she could, Miss Zhao got a medicine box. 

11 With the medicine box under her arm, Miss Zhao hurried off to look after the man. 

11a With the butter tea in her hand, Doma hurried off to look after the old man. 

11b That young man went out with no hat on. 

11c Don't hurry, we're not late. 

11d Hurry home before it gets dark. 

12 It's really nice of you. / It's very kind of you. 

13 While they were sweeping the floor, the bell rang. 

13a The students were reading when the teacher came in.
Unit 6 In the library

Useful Expressions

1. I have got a book. གས་འ西藏་པར་འབྲེ།
2. I'm so glad. གཟུགས་པར་འབྲེ།
3. What a pity. དེ་ཐུབ་དུ་བཞིན་པར།
4. reading room ཁབ་པར།
5. on time གཅིག་ཏུ་མཁྱེན་པར།

Grammar

Present Perfect

Have / Has + འབྲེ།

1a I have seen the film. གཞི་གཞི་བཞིན།
1b The teacher has gone to the office. གཟུགས་དེའོང་སྦུ་ལམ་སྐྱེལ།
1c I haven't seen her these days. གཟུགས་དེའོང་བཞིན་པར་རོ།
1d Have you returned the book today? གཟུགས་དེའོང་མི་དེའོང་བཞིན་པར་རོ།
1e I have never seen him before. གཟུགས་དེའོང་མི་འཇིག་གཞི་བཞིན་པར་རོ།
1f We have lived in Lhasa since 1975. གཟུགས་དེའོང་མི་འཇིག་གཞི་བཞིན་པར་རོ།
1g He came here two hours ago. གཟུགས་དེའོང་མི་འཇིག་གཞི་བཞིན་པར་རོ།
1h He has been here for two hours. གཟུགས་དེའོང་མི་འཇིག་གཞི་བཞིན་པར་རོ།

Text Explanation

1. I've lost my science book. Have you seen it anywhere? གཟུགས་དེའོང་མི་འཇིག་གཞི་བཞིན་པར་རོ།
2. Have you found your ruler yet? གཟུགས་དེའོང་མི་འཇིག་གཞི་བཞིན་པར་རོ།
In the library she has got books on many different subjects.

She works very hard and is very helpful.

She likes the children to read books in the reading room.

But she is very strict.

Our teacher is strict in her work.

You must always return your library book on time.

He asks very politely.

Tom is a polite boy.

It's polite to say "Thank you" when someone helps you.

They're on that shelf over there.

I borrowed a book from the library two weeks ago.
14 I've looked for it everywhere.

15 What a pity!

16 What a pity! He couldn't go with us.

17 I'm afraid that if you've lost it, you must pay for it.

18 It's the library's. Please be more careful from now on.

19 You must study hard from now on.

20 Have you ever travelled on a train?
Unit 7 Mainly revision

Text Explanation

1 What is the most popular subject in your class?  
1a Who is the youngest person in your class?  
1b Who is the best guitar player at the moment?  

2 Miss Forgetful.  
2a I always forget dates.  
2b He has forgotten all his French.  
2c Old people are sometimes forgetful.  

3 Here is a shopping list so you won't forget anything.  

4 Have you finished already?  
4a When she reached home, her mother asked, "Have you got everything?"  

5 That wasn't very clever!  
5a Uncle Lhaben arrived in Lhasa yesterday morning.  
5b The students got to school at eight o'clock.  

6 She was taking the things out of the basket when she dropped a bag of candy.  
6a We were having supper when the phone rang.  

7 He was good at swimming when he was a child.  

8 They both started to pick the apples again.  

155
Unit 8 On the farm

Useful Expressions

1. With pleasure
2. No hurry.
3. With pleasure.
4. As soon as.
5. Hear of

Grammar

Present Perfect with "already, just, yet, ever, never."

1. Have you finished your work yet?
   - Yes, I have. I've just finished it.
   - No, I haven't finished it yet.
2. Have you ever been to a chicken farm?
   - No, I've never been to a chicken farm.
3. I'll return it as soon as I can.
4. He told me about this as soon he saw me.
5. Thank you very much for lending it to me.
6. Could I borrow a pen, please?
   - A: May I borrow your bike?

Text Explanation

1. There are several kinds of animals on the farm.
2. Have you ever been to West Hill Farm?
   - 2a Have you ever been to Qinghai Lake?
3. I'll return it as soon as I can.
4. He told me about this as soon he saw me.
5. Thank you very much for lending it to me.
6. Could I borrow a pen, please?
   - A: May I borrow your bike?
B: Sorry. I lent it to Hangmu yesterday.

6b A: Could you lend me your pen?

B: Certainly. Here you are.

It's just had a baby.

I've never heard of that before.

I've just heard about his illness.

Is there anyone at home?

I hope everything goes well.

What can I do for you?

It's dead.

The hunter fired and the tiger fell dead.

The old man died two years ago.

Have you forgotten already?

Lily has just finished her homework.

What do you get from yaks?

Have you ever milked a yak?

Have you got a moment?
Useful Expressions  བུད་གཞན་ཐོས་ོས།
1 Don't rush.  རོགས་ནས་བཤད།
2 Take a look.  རོ།གུང་།
3 All one's life.  རྫོགས་བུ་གཞན་།

Grammar འཛིན་དོན་དམིགས།

Present Perfect with "for, since." རོ་ཁོ་ན་དུ་"for, since"གཞིང་དོན་དམིགས་ོས།
1 I've known Mr. Norbu for three years.  རྟོགས་ནས་ཐེག་ཆེན་མེད་པའི་ཞེས་བསྐལ་བ་རྗེས།
2 I've lived here since 1998.  རྟོགས་ནས་ཐུབ་ཆ་གཅིག་ཐོན་འོ་ཞིབ་འབྱུང་བཞིན་།

Present Perfect compared with Past Simple. རོ་ཁོ་ན་དུ་"for, since"གཞིང་དོན་དམིགས་ོས།
3 He has gone to America.  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བར་གཞིང་། (ཞེས་པལ་ཞིབ་འབྱུང་བཞིན་)
4 He went to America last month.  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བར་དག་པའི་ཞེས་བསྐལ་བ་ཐོན་འོ་ཞིབ་འབྱུང་བཞིན་།
5 They saw the film last night.  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བར་གཞིང་།
6 He has lost his book.  རྟོགས་ནས་དེ་བཅོམ་རྣམ་ོག་

Text Explanation གཞིང་དོན་དམིགས་ོས།
1 How long have you been at school?  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བ་ལས་གཞིང་།
   1a A: How long have you been like this?  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བར་དག་པའི་ཁོ་ན་ོས།
      B: Ever since last night.  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བ་ཐོན་འོ་ཞིབ་འབྱུང་བཞིན།
2 The factory has been there for several years.  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བ་ལས་གཞིང་།
3 Tomorrow it's our turn to clean the school.  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བ་ལས་གཞིང་།
4 They arrived early on a Tuesday morning.  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བ་ལས་གཞིང་།
   4a On a cold winter night.  རྟོགས་ནས་ལེ་བ་ལས་གཞིང་།

158
The students walked through the gates with Uncle Wang.

The thief came in through the window.

The Yellow River runs through Jiantsa.

There is a bridge across the river.

Please come up these steps with me and be careful.

We don't want any of you to get lost.

The workers all wear thick clothes and glasses.

Tibetan girls like wearing red flowers in their hair.

The glasses keep their eyes safe.

My house is about twenty minutes by bike.

It is about half an hour's walk (from here) to the factory.

My home is about three hours by bus from here.

I've lived there all my life.

He has taught in this school all his life.
Useful Expressions

1. Hold on for a moment, please.
2. I'm afraid he isn't here right now.
3. I'm sure he won't mind.
4. He may fail...
5. Leave a message.
6. in trouble
7. do one's best
8. learn by oneself
9. go back
10. be able to
11. do well in

Grammar

Object Clause

1. She says (that) she will leave a message on his desk.
2. We know (that) Danba will work hard.

Text Explanation

1. Could I speak to the headmaster, please?
2. He wants to talk to your uncle.
   2a. Hold on a moment, please.
   2b. Hold on a moment, I'll come soon.
3. That's very kind of you.
3a It's very kind of you to come and see me.
3b Thanks very much. It's very kind of you.
4 I would like to see him as soon as possible.
4a Would you come and get it as quickly as possible?
4b Tell them the news as early as possible.
4c Please give me a call as soon as you're back.
5 Sorry, I'm free every day except today.
5a The children go to school every day except Saturday and Sunday.
6 The boy can speak some everyday English.
6a Are you able to come tomorrow?
6b I was able to catch what he said.
7 Between eight and nine.
7a What's the difference between them?
8 He says that he won't be free until tomorrow.
8a They say (that) they've studied at this school for two years.
9 I'm afraid that Jim will miss a lot of lessons.
9a You don't know how I miss you.
9b I'm sorry I missed you at the station.
9c He never missed a day's work.
10 He may even fail his Chinese exam.

10a They failed to reach there on time.

10b He failed to keep his word.

10c It's true that he may fall behind the other students.

11 It's true that we'll go and work on a farm.

11a I'm sure that he won't mind.

12 Of course, we can learn by ourselves.

13 They went swimming every day during the summer holidays.
Unit 11 A great inventor

Useful Expressions

1. It's a bad line.
2. Send away
3. Try out
4. Send for
5. Turn down

Grammar

Infinitive verbs.

1. The doctor wanted to operate.
   1a She wanted to borrow my radio.
   1b They wanted to get home before it got dark.
   1c My father wants me to be a doctor.

2. Tell her to turn it down.
   2a Ask him to come quickly.
   2b She asked me to help her with the housework.

3. When did you begin to study French?

4. I see him pass here every day.

Text Explanation

1. What do you call them in English?
   1a Can you call all the students' names?
2 Some of these inventions have changed the world more than others. 

3 Which of these do you think is the most useful invention?

3a Which of these would you most like to own?

3b Lhamo's uncle owns this land. He's a good farmer.

4 The boy had so many strange questions.

5 The teacher could not answer all of them.

5a I don't know all of them.

5a I know none of them.

6 Not everyone can work out the problem.

7 She found him that he was a very good pupil.

7a We've had five lessons. I find them easy.

7b I think it easy to do it by myself.

7c I feel it hard to finish the work in two days.

8 You'll have to build it yourself.

8a We must study hard for our country's development.

9 With the money he bought things for his lab.
9a She sent for a doctor.

10 I can't see clearly enough.
10a I have enough time to read the book.
10b He operated on her at once, and Zhaxi's mother was saved.

11 Come to my home tomorrow if possible.
11a A: When will you use my bike?
     B: Now if possible.

12 She said (that) hers has broken.
12a Her radio has stopped working.

13 I went into the workshop and saw them breaking down the machine.
Unit 12 Have a good time, Jim

Useful Expressions

1 Have you changed your mind? ตัดสินใจเปลี่ยนใจออกไปที่ผ่านมา
2 I don't mind. ไม่เอาใจเลย
3 Could you do something for me, please? คุณจะต้องทำอะไรบางอย่างให้ฉัน
4 write down ทำการเขียน
5 make sure ทำการตรวจสอบ
6 by air บินด้วยเครื่องบิน
7 come round กลับมา
8 in a minute จำกัดเวลา 1 นาที

Grammar

Object Clause (what, when, where, who, how).

1 Do you know what time the ship leaves? คุณรู้ว่าเรือออกเวลาเท่าไหร่
   1a We don't know when we arrive. เราไม่รู้ว่าเราจะมาถึงเวลาเท่าไหร่
   1b Tell me what time you get up every day. บอกฉันว่าคุณจะ�ย์เวลาอยู่ในวันที่
   1c I know who he wants to see. ฉันรู้ว่าคนนี้ต้องการจะไปพบกับใคร
   1d Please ask him when he arrived here yesterday. ขอให้คุณถามเขาว่าเขาถึงที่นี่เมื่อวานนี้
   1e Go and see who she is taking care of. ไปหาคนที่เธอดูแลอยู่

2 Can you tell me where he lives? คุณจะบอกฉันถึงที่อยู่ของเขาไหม
   2a Could you tell me where the nearest post office is? คุณจะบอกฉันถึงที่ไปรษณีย์ที่ใกล้ที่สุดไหม
   2b Can you tell me who we have to see? คุณจะบอกฉันถึงคนที่เราต้องไปเดินทางพบกับคนคนนี้ไหม
   2c Could you tell me how we get to the place? คุณจะบอกฉันว่าเรายังจะไปยังที่นั้นได้อย่างไร
A: Could you do something for me, please?
B: What would you like me to do?
A: I'd like you to put the meat in the dish.

1a Could you help me with English?

2 Could you look after her while we're away?
2a Dorji's family has been away for two weeks.

3 With pleasure!
3a A: Are you sure you don't mind?  
B: Glad to help!

4 I'll take good care of her.
4a We must take care of everything in school.

5 Make sure she has clean water every day.

6 Please speak to her in English as much as possible every day.

7 He'll be here in a minute. 
7a Don't leave your seat. The film will begin in no time.

8 They are waiting, aren't they?
8a You like fish, don't you?  
8b You don't like fish, do you?
8c You haven't changed your mind, have you? 你说你还没改主意，对吧？

9 Do you know what time their plane leaves Beijing? 你知道他们的飞机几点离开北京吗？

9a Could you tell me which gate we have to go to? 你能告诉我我们该去哪个门吗？

9b Could you tell me what work we have to do? 你能告诉我我们该做什么工作吗？
Useful Expressions

1. No news is good news.
2. How time flies!
3. Sitting room
4. Hear from

Grammar

Infinitive verbs.

1. They climbed up the hill to see the whole city clearly.
   1a. Who will come to visit our school?
   1b. To catch the early bus, he got up at five o'clock.
2. "Have been to" and "have been in" can be used with "once," "twice," "never," "ever," "several times," and "many times" to express time.
   2a. A: Have you ever been to Xi'an?
       B: I have been there twice.
3. Object Clause.
   3a. He said (that) it was very cold in Yushu.
3b She said that there were hundreds of people at the horse racing. (ཞེས་ཐོབ་དཔེ་ནི་འབུག་
འཁྲོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་དུ་གསུངས་སོ། །བདེ་བྱེད་ཟེར་ཟེར་)

4 Comparison of "have been to" and "have gone to." || "Have been to" vs "have gone to"

4a She's gone to Rebgong. (She hasn't returned yet.) བཟུུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་དུ་འོ་ཚེན་
(གཞུང་དཔེར་བོད་སུ་རོ་)

4b She's been to Rebgong. (She went there once.) བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་དུ་འོ་ཚེན་
(བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་སུ་རོ་)

Text Explanation ཡུལ་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་སུ་རོ་

1 He's gone to England with his family. དགུ་བུ་སོ་ཐོབ་དཔེ་ནང་བུ་འཁྲོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་

1a They've gone to the Great Wall. Have you ever been there? བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་དུ་
(བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་སུ་རོ་)

1b Have you received a letter from Dawa yet? བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་དུ་འོ་ཚེན་

2 How time flies. ཡུལ་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་སུ་རོ་

2a How happy you look! བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་དུ་འོ་ཚེན་

2b How fast a spaceship flies! ཡུལ་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་སུ་རོ་

2c What a beautiful flower it is! ཡུལ་བོད་ལྷག་བོད་སུ་རོ་

3 Please give them all my best wishes. དགུ་བུ་སོ་ཐོབ་དཔེ་ནང་སོ་མོ་སོ་མོ་

3a Best wishes to you! བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་དུ་འོ་ཚེན་

4 Is she very unhappy without me? བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་དུ་འོ་ཚེན་

4a I can't finish the work without your help. བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་དུ་འོ་ཚེན་

5 Don't forget to give her some food and change her water, will you? བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་

5a Remember to tell him about this. བཟུུ་བོད་པ་ཐེག་ཆེན་

170
5b You won't forget to post the letter, will you?

6 He will work on a new book during his holiday.

6a I believe that they will work hard on herding.

6b I will have to choose presents for all the family soon, but I haven't chosen any yet.

7 Mum slept almost the whole way.

7a It is almost as tall as the room.

7b The good news made almost everyone feel pleasant.

8 We've seen several members of the family since we arrived.

8a You'll have to finish the exercises before class is over.

9 It is now standing in the corner of our sitting room.

9a The shop is just at the corner of the street.

10 He said that he was working hard on his Chinese.

10a A: What did Nima say in his letter?

B: He said that he was going to return in two weeks.

10b He said that he hadn't bought any yet.
Useful Expressions

1 kind-hearted ต้องใจดี
2 dress-up แต่งตัว
3 look-up หาความหมาย
4 on top of อยู่บน

Text Explanation

1 My grandparents are very kind-hearted. ตัวฉันก็ยังดีกับฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
   1a You are sad-hearted. Why? ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
2 The plane landed safely. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
   2a The bird landed on top of the house. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
   2b He fills each of the bowls with beef. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
3 When they were young, Mr Green sometimes dressed up in a red coat. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
   3a All the girls dressed up for the party. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
   3b When we were young, we dressed up in new robes during Tibetan New Year. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
4 Now look up the words in a dictionary. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
5 They met at the school gate and said hello to each other. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
   5a The children told each other to try not to sleep on Losar Eve. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
6 You're never too old to enjoy Christmas. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
   6a You are too young to understand such things. พิมพ์ฉันก็ยังดีกับอยู่ถ้าฉันได้อีกเรื่อยๆ
6b He couldn't wait to tell them the good news.

7 Let's help each other, shall we?

7a It's from England, isn't it?

7b You are new, aren't you?

7c Uncle Jantso will be free next week, won't he?

7d The children can't ride horse, can they?
Unit 15 At home with the twins

Useful Expressions

1. What can I do for you? هل يمكنني مساعدتك?
2. I would like to make friends with her. أرغب في معرفة صديقة.
3. I won't make a mistake if you teach me well. لنأخطأ إذا تعلمني بشكل جيد.
4. I can't decide which one to buy. لا أستطيع اتخاذ قرار.
5. Would you like to try it on before you buy it? هل تود التسلق قبل الشراء؟
6. Those trousers are not large enough for him. تلك السراويل ليست كبيرة بما فيه الكفاية.
7. That new leather coat is not cheap. هذا السترة الجديد ليس متوسط.
8. Please take your time! اخذ الوقت مناسب.
9. I get on well with all my classmates. أكون على تواصل مع جميع مدرستي.
10. I'll visit you right away. سأزورك فوراً.
11. No hurry! لا تسرح.

Text Explanation

1. Father: Do we need some more tea? هل نحتاج إلى مشة إضافية؟
   Mother: Yes. I think we do. نعم. أعتقد أننا نحتاج.
   1a A: Do you need one more cup of milk tea? هل تحتاج إلى كوب آخر من الشاي?
       B: Yes. I think I do. Ask Cairang to get some more. نعم. أعتقد أننا نحتاج. استدعى CaRan.
   1b A: Would you like some cheese? هل تود بعض الجبن؟
       B: Yes. I would like some, please. نعم. أود بعض.

2. Lucy: Mom, can't Lily do it? It's her turn! أمي، لا يمكن ليلى أن تفعله؟ هذا دورها!
   Mother: So it is! Lily did you hear what I said? هل هذا صحيح؟ أنت سمعت ما说过؟

174
2a Lhamo: Can’t Cairang herd the livestock alone? It’s his turn. འཆི་རྒྱལ་ཁུངས་་བུ་ཅན་གི་ནི་མི་ལོག་བསྐོལ་དེ་དག་

Dad: So it is! Cairang, did you hear what I said? འཆི་རྒྱལ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

2b Lhamo: Didn’t you hear me, Zhaxi? It’s your turn to fetch the water! འས་ལེན། རོ་

Zhaxi: So it is. I’ll do it at once. འཆི་རྒྱལ་ཐ་སྟོད་ལས་སྤྲུལ་

3 He asked whether they needed some more tea. བོད་ཆེ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

3a The headmaster asked whether the new students came from Lhasa. གླེངས་པའི་གི་མ་

3b Uncle Danba asked whether they liked his new robe. རྡོ་དོན་བ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

3c People often ask whether I like being a twin. གླེངས་པའི་གི་མ་མ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

4 Usually we get on very well with each other. བོད་ཆེ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

4a It is very important to get on well with each other. རྡོ་དོན་བ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

4b How are you getting on with your English study? རྡོ་དོན་བ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

5 But people still mistake us for each other. བོད་ཆེ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

5a I am very sorry that I mistook your meaning. རྡོ་དོན་བ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

5b You must tell him that he has made a great mistake. རྡོ་དོན་བ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

6 Can’t we be different from each other sometimes? བོད་ཆེ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

6a These two sheep look the same, but they are different from each other in many

ways. གླེངས་པའི་གི་མ་མ་མི་འགྲོ་བཞིན་ལོངས་

6b Do you know the new singer? His way of singing is different from Debi's. རྡོ་དོན་བ་

ཐ་སྟོད་ལས་སྤྲུལ་དེ་དག་

175
7 Sometimes, my grandma decides to buy a big birthday present for both of us.

7a Lhamo decided to travel to Lhasa with her father during this summer holiday.

7b Both brothers decided to put up a tent in the mountains.

8 We can't decide who should open it first.

8a Please tell me who should ferment the yoghurt.

8b She decided that she should drive the sheep home earlier than usual.

9 Shall I ask the shopkeeper if I can try it on?

9a You should try on the boots before you decide to buy them.

9b May I try on that red hat before I decide if I want to buy it?

Grammar

The Object Clause (4)

1 How to use whether and if. || Whether/If?

"Whether/if" གི་ཐེན་ཆེན་པོ་སེམས་དང་དགེ་བོ་ཆེན་པོ་ཡིན་ཐེན་ཆེན་པོ་། དེ་བོད།

1a She asked if / whether I wanted more mutton.  བོད་ཕྲ་བོ་གཞི་ཕྲ་ལོ་མ་ཐེན་ཆེན་པོ།

1b She asks if / whether I have a new Tibetan robe.  བོད་ཕྲ་བོ་གཞི་ཕྲ་ལོ་ཐེན་ཆེན་པོ།

1c The village leaders discussed if / whether we should fight for the grassland.  དེ་གཞི་ཕྲ་བོ་གཞི་ཕྲ་ལོ་ཐེན་ཆེན་པོ།

1d The lama isn't sure whether / if there will be a religious gathering.  ཁྲ་ཐེན་ཆེན་པོ་བཞི་ཕྲ་ལོ་མ་ཐེན་ཆེན་པོ་།
2 How to use **too** and **either**. || **Too** and **either**

**Either**

2a Here are two horses, you can choose either (one or the other).

2b Either of you can come to my house.

2c Trees are budding on either side of the street.

2d His hands rested on either side of her shoulders.

2e Cairang hasn't finished his homework. Doma hasn't, either.

2f Nima didn't agree to fetch water. Yangzom didn't agree, either.

"**Too**"

2g Uncle Danba has bought a red horse. Uncle Danzen has bought one, too.

2h Doma likes butter tea. Cairang likes it, too.
Unit 16 What's it made of?

Useful Expressions
1. My sword is made of metal and it was made in Nepal.
2. A corral is used for keeping the animals.
3. English is used by many people in the world as their mother tongue.
4. Tibetan art is popular around the world.

Text Explanation
1. What's it made of? 
   1a What are the prayer beads made of?
   1b Prayer beads are usually made of sandalwood.
2. Find the names of the five countries where English is spoken as the first language.
   2a The Qinghai-Tibet Plateau is well known as the roof of the world.
   2b The yak is known as the boat of the plateau.
3. Which language is spoken by the largest number of people in the world?
   3a What kind of religious entertainment is performed in your village during the New Year?
   3b What Tibetan dialects are spoken in Tibetan areas?
4. English is the first language in none of these countries.
4a Seafood and chicken are popular in none of the villages of my home county.

4b Skyscrapers are present in none of the grassland areas I’ve visited.

5 It's one of the world's most important languages, because it is so widely used.

5a Tsamba is one of the Tibetan people's popular foods, because it is so nutritious and convenient.

5b Lhabrang is one of the famous monasteries in Amdo, because of its long history.

6 English is spoken as the first language by most people in the USA...

6a Mani is recited as a mantra essence by most Tibetan people in China.

6b My engagement was decided by my father just before he died.

7 Most business letters around the world are written in English.

7a Most Tibetan authors’ works are related to Buddhism.

8 If you learn even a little English, you’ll find it useful after you leave school.

8a If you speak even a little Tibetan, you’ll find it easy when you travel in Tibetan places.

8b If you had even a little money, you’d find it easy to persuade her.
Grammar བོད་ཀྱིས་ད་ཆབ་གཅིག

The Passive Voice and the Active Voice. གཞགས་དཔེ་བདུན་ཆེན་པོ་དང་བཅུ་དཔེ་ཆེན་པོ

1 Past Simple. ཁྱབ་དཔེ་དང་པོ

1a The government repaired the old bridge last year. གཞག་གཞག་ཚད་བདུན་ཆེན་པོ་དང་

1b The old bridge was repaired by the government last year. གཞག་གཞག་ཚད་བདུན་ཆེན་པོ་

2 Simple Future. གྲེས་པ་དང་།

2a Many pine trees will be planted around the monastery by the end of next year. རྟེན་པའི་རྒྱལ་

3 Present simple. རྗེས་དཔེ་དང་།

3a Mountain god altar sites are chosen by lamas. འབང་དཔེ་བདུན་ཆེན་པོ་དང་པོ་

3b Mountain god altar sites are chosen by whom? འབང་དཔེ་བདུན་ཆེན་པོ་དང་པོ་

4 Present Perfect tense. རྗེས་དཔེ་དང་།

4a I have made many sacrificial fires. འཕགས་སྤུར་བྱས་བྱར་སྤུར་རྣམ་

4b Many sacrificial fires have been made by me. འཕགས་སྤུར་བྱས་བྱར་སྤུར་དཔེ་ཆེན་

180
Unit 17 What was it used for?

Useful Expressions

1 Can you tell me the way to the Nationalities Press? 你能告诉我去民族出版社的路吗？
2 You can't miss it. 你不会错过的。
3 Please turn left / right at the (third) crossing. 请在第三个路口左转 / 右转。
4 Have you seen those military weapons on show in the museum? 你看到博物馆里展示的这些军事武器了吗？
5 PULL / PUSH 拉 / 推
6 BUSINESS HOURS 工作时间
7 ENTRANCE 入口
8 EXIT 出口
9 NO PHOTOS 禁止拍照
10 NO SMOKING 禁止吸烟

Text Explanation

1 What was it used for? 它是用来干什么的？
   1a What is a wooden bucket used for? 木桶是用来干什么的？
   1b It is used for milking female yaks. 它是用来挤牛奶的。

2 Can you tell me the way to the museum, please? 你能告诉我去博物馆的路吗？
   2a Can you tell me the way to Kumbum Monastery, please? 你能告诉我去库木然的路吗？
   2b Go along Number One Road until you reach the big intersection, cross the intersection, turn left, and then you will find a bus station where you can find many buses to Kumbum. You can't miss it! 沿着一号路到大交叉路口，穿过路口，左转，然后你就会找到一个公交车站，那里有很多去库木然的公交车。你不会错过的！

181
3 It says here, on the card, that it was used in plays.

3a It says here, in the book, that the Potala Palace was established during King Songzangambo's reign.

3b The tour guide explained to us that Shakyamuni's life was depicted on the monastery walls.

4 These days we use a thermos.

4a These days we use vehicles instead of yaks in many Amdo areas.

4b In the old days we used to use prayer flags as victory flags, but now we use them in religious activities.

5 Some of the things were hundreds of years old.

5a Most of the nomad girls are married at the age of seventeen.

5b Some of the Tibetan teachers are specialized in the Gesar epic.

6 The group of girls all moved on and had a good drink of tea together.

6a The flock of wild geese flew down to the lake and rested for the night.

6b The herd of wild yaks left their winter pasture in the mountains and moved down to the valley.
Grammar གཞན་ལེགས་

The Passive Voice(2) གནས་དཔའ་བཅོས་

1 Statement གནས་དཔའ་བཅོས་

1a Tibetan writing was invented by Sambhota in the seventh century. གཞན་བོད་ལ་གནས་དཔའ་བཅོས་

1b Tibetan was spoken in my hometown when I was a child. གཞན་བོད་ལ་གནས་དཔའ་བཅོས་

2 Questions གཞན་ཐོང་

2a What was invented by Sambhota? གཞན་བོད་ལ་གནས་དཔའ་བཅོས་

2b What language was spoken in your hometown when you were a little child? གཞན་བོད་ལ་གནས་དཔའ་
Unit 18 Planting trees

Useful Expressions རྣམ་ལུགས་ཆོས་སྤྲོལ།

1 This tea’s salt content is just right. དངོས་བཞིན་གྲགས་བཤད་པ་དངོས་བཞིན་གྲགས་བཤད་པ་ངོ་བོ
2 The more you study, the better you will become. དེ་ཉིད་སྟེན་འེལ་བར་ཐུབ་པ་ནས་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
3 He can more or less communicate in English. དེ་ཉིད་ལེགས་པོར་ཤེས་ཤེས་འེལ་བར་ཐུབ་པ་ནས་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
4 Lhasa is far away from my village. བུག་ཐོན་པའི་ཐུབ་པ་ནས་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
5 Some old people in our village say we must stop the animals from coming to the crop fields. དེ་ཉིད་ལེགས་པོར་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ

Text Explanation རྣམ་ལུགས་ཆོས་སྤྲོལ།

1 Come to school in your old clothes tomorrow. དེ་ཉིད་ལེགས་པོར་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
1a Some muscular young Tibetan men came to dance gracefully in their unique robes. བུག་ཐོན་པའི་ཐུབ་པ་ནས་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
1b Come to the meeting tomorrow in your best robe. དེ་ཉིད་ལེགས་པོར་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
2 The ground must be just right neither too wet nor too dry. དེ་ཉིད་ལེགས་པོར་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
2a The boots must be just right neither too large nor too small. བུག་ཐོན་པའི་ཐུབ་པ་ནས་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
2b Neither of us speaks Tibetan. དེ་ཉིད་ལེགས་པོར་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
3 Knock a long stick into the earth next to the hole. Make sure that it is straight. བུག་ཐོན་པའི་ཐུབ་པ་ནས་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
3a Pound a nail into the wall next to the doorframe. Make sure that it is strong enough to hang the picture from. བུག་ཐོན་པའི་ཐུབ་པ་ནས་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
3b Push this cart to the field near the road. Make sure that the cart is full of manure. བུག་ཐོན་པའི་ཐུབ་པ་ནས་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
4 Put the tree in the hole so that it is straight. བུག་ཐོན་པའི་ཐུབ་པ་ནས་ཤེས་་རུ་བོ
4a Put more clothes on so that you will not feel cold.

4b Fence the grassland so that the animals won't starve in the winter.

5 A lot of good land has gone with them, leaving only sand.

5a Many young men leave our village every spring, leaving only the women and girls.

5b All the old people left the party, leaving only the young people to sing love songs.

6 Today, too many trees are still being cut down in the USA.

6a Nowadays, Tibetan studies is being taught all over the world.

6b Today, many children are still being kept by their parents from attending schools.

7 They must be built all over the world.

7a Our temple should be finished by the end of this year.

7b Pine trees must be planted along the bank of this river.

8 But we're growing a lot more now, thanks to the Green Wall.

8a Animal husbandry in my hometown has been very successful, thanks to animal scientists.

8b My brother won the prize in the horse racing, thanks to our steed.
Grammar བོད་ཐོབ་བཞིན་གཞན་

1. The Passive Voice. ཆུབ་རུབ་བཉའ་ཉིད་མེད་པའི་ཉེས་བོད་ཐོབ་བཞིན་གཞན་

ཐེག་ཆེན་བྱེད་པ་འཛིན་ཤེས་“will, would, can, could, shall, should, ought to, must, have to, may, might”

1a He can speak Chinese. སྤྱད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

1b She should be here by nine. སྤྱད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

1c He shouldn’t be late. སྤྱད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

1d They might not come to the party. སྤྱད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

1e He will can go with us. སྤད་ལྕ།

1f She must would study very hard. སྤད་ལྕ།

1g Many trees should be planted. སྤད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

1h The ritual may be completed tomorrow. སྤད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

1i The old bridge must be repaired by Tibetan New Year. སྤད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

2. Measurement རབ་ངིན་གཞན་

2a My swimming pool is only two meters deep. སྤད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

2b This history book is just five centimetres thick. སྤད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

2c Our village's threshing ground is about two kilometres wide. སྤད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

2d My grandpa is seventy nine years old. སྤད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

2e That stupa is sixty meters tall. སྤད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།

2f The surrounding wall of this temple is three meters high. སྤད་ཆེན་བཞིན་ལས།
Unit 19 Mainly revision

Useful Expressions

1 How long does it take to go to Lhasa by train / bus / horse / airplane / foot? นั้นใช้เวลานานเท่าไหร่?
2 How far away is Kumbum from Ziling? ห่างจากเมือง Ziling
3 Don’t drink all the time. อย่าดื่มตลอดเวลา
4 Many eagles began hovering in space after the wolf killed the sheep. นกเขาเริ่มเข้าไปบินในทวีป
5 So far as I know no Tibetans can speak Russian. ฉันรู้ว่าไม่มีคนเชื้อชาติชาวทิเบตที่จะพูดนั้น
6 There is something wrong with the milking machine, it doesn’t work any more. มีสิ่งผิดปกติ

Text Explanation

1 Many of the stars can’t be seen because they are too far away. นกเขาเริ่มเข้าไปบินในทวีป
1a Many Tibetan ancient books can’t be read because they are too incomprehensible. นกเขาเริ่มเข้าไปบินในทวีป
1b Some of the mountains can’t be climbed because they are too high to climb. นกเขาเริ่มเข้าไปบินในทวีป

2 So far no man has travelled further than the moon. นกเขาเริ่มเข้าไปบินในทวีป
2a So far Tibetan students didn’t take any interest in computers. นกเขาเริ่มเข้าไปบินในทวีป
2a So far no human beings have ever visited Mars. นกเขาเริ่มเข้าไปบินในทวีป
3 Man-made satellites have been sent up into space by several countries. 

3a Lots of wind-horses have been thrown up into the air during the ritual. 

3b Many schools in Tibetan areas have been repaired. 

4 Older people must be spoken to politely. 

4a Beginning language learners must be talked to slowly and clearly. 

4b Tibetan people's living standard should be improved by Tibetans. 

5 Which channel is it on? It's usually found on channel four. 

5a Which shop sells good wool cloth? The shop on the corner usually does. 

5b Which household makes the best Tibetan boots? The household near the village entrance usually makes the best boots. 

Grammar

Passive Voice.

Subject + Be (present) + past participle "Subject + Be (present) + past participle" 

1a Most of the subjects are taught in Chinese in many schools. 

1b Most of the temple dances are performed by monks. 

1c Barley is grown on the Qinghai-Tibet Plateau.
Unit 20 The world's population

Useful expressions

1 It goes on, hour after hour. ต่อเนื่องเรื่อย ๆ
2 The population grows faster and faster. จำนวนประชากรเติบโตเร็วขึ้นเรื่อย ๆ
3 Standing room only! ที่นั่งเต็มที่
4 At the beginning of this term, I was planning to study very hard, but I couldn't. ในเริ่มต้นเทอมนี้,ฉันกำลังจะเรียนดี แต่ฉันทำไม่ได้
5 Hundreds of languages are spoken on the earth nowadays. มีภาษาเกือบพันชนิดที่พูดบนโลกทุกวันนี้
6 Education is very important in less / more developed countries. การศึกษาเป็นเรื่องที่สำคัญในประเทศที่พัฒนาต่ำ/สูง
7 UN (the United Nations) Headquarters is in New York. สำนักงานใหญ่ของสหประชาชาติอยู่ที่นิวยอร์ก
8 What's the population of Tibet? จำนวนประชากรของทิเบตคือเท่าไร

Text Explanation

1 The world's population.

1a What's the population of Qinghai Province? จำนวนประชากรของ.zone.

1b Chengdu has a large population among the Chinese cities. ฉันมีจำนวนประชากรที่มากที่สุดในเมืองจีน

2 By what year will the world's population reach 6 billion? จำนวนประชากรของโลกจะถึง 6 นิลลิוןในปีหน้าหรือไม่

2a By what year will you be able to speak English fluently? ฉันจะพูดภาษาอังกฤษได้ดีในปีหน้าต่อไปหรือไม่

2b By what year will you be married? ฉันจะแต่งงานในปีหน้าหรือไม่

3 Standing room only. ที่นั่งเต็มที่
3a The temple’s central hall is full of monks, there is no room for villagers.

3b The big bus was so crowded that there was hardly any standing room for me.

4 So it goes on, hour after hour.  

4a The rite goes on, hour after hour.

4b The argument between those two families goes on, generation after generation.

5 Just think how many more there will be in one year.  

5a Would you like to guess how many Tibetans there will be at my Christmas party this year?

5b Just think how many more times you could talk to me in a year if you had a telephone.

6 There will not be enough space for anybody else.  

6a There is not enough space in the shed for the livestock when it rains.

6b There is enough space in this notebook for you to write the rest down.

Grammar
1a I didn’t know if / whether my horse would run away.

1b I was not sure whether / if the prayer flag was going to fall down.

1c Villagers never knew that the horse racing would become the festival’s focus.

1d My boyfriend never asked what was going to happen to us after we separated.

1e She didn’t tell me where she would go.

1f He didn’t tell me when he was coming.

1g I didn’t know where the tent was.

2 Numbers

100 one hundred བོད།
130 one hundred and thirty བོད་ལྷགས།
1000 one thousand དབུ།
1340 one thousand three hundred and forty བོད་ལྷགས་གནས་པའི།
10 000 ten thousand རྡོ།
20 053 twenty thousand and fifty three རྡོ་གནས་པའི། དབུས།
100 000 one hundred thousand སྐད།
120 340 one hundred and twenty thousand three hundred and forty སྐད་ལྷགས་གནས་པའི།
1000 000 one million སུ་རྡོ།
100 300 000 one hundred million and three hundred thousand སུ་རྡོ་ལྷགས་པའི།
1000 000 000 one billion སུ་སྐད།
10 400 006 000 ten billion four hundred million and six thousand སུ་སྐད་ལྷགས་པའི།
100 000 000 000 one hundred billion སུ་སྐད་ལྷགས།
Unit 21 Shopping

Useful expressions

1. What can I do for you?
2. Can I help you?
3. How much do they cost? (How much is it?)
4. Just a moment, please!
5. My boots are worn out.
6. That Tibetan scholar is busy collecting some well known authors’ works.
7. I’d like a bit of sugar on my rice.
8. It’s important to think about your future.
9. He looks at the painting in surprise.
10. My mule fell over a cliff and died last month.
11. That shop is selling out its nice robes quickly.
12. The students in our class are either too big or too small for these shirts.
13. What size do you want?

Text Explanation

1. The shop was quite new, for it had opened only the week before. (ཐེས་བདེ་བརྒྱུད་བོད་ལྔ་ནམ་མཁའི་ཚིག་མེད་དུ་བསྟོད་པར་རྟེན་ཞིང་)
   1a His written Tibetan is extremely good, for he has studied Tibetan at Tibet University. (བོད་ཀྱི་ཚིག་བཅོམ་པ་ཐེམ་མཐའ་ཐེམ་གྱུར་བྱུགས་ལ་སྣོ་བོ་བོད་ཀྱི་ཚིག་བཅོམ་བཤེད་ཀྱི་ཚིག་སྲིད་ཀྱིས་ནི།)
   1b This sweater is quite good, for it is made from wool. (ཤེས་སྟོན་ནི་སྟེར་འགྲོ་ནི་བོད་ཀྱི་མེ་ཏོང་)

2. They were either too big or too small. (ཐེས་བདེ་བརྒྱུད་ཤེས་སྟོན་ནི་སྟེར་འགྲོ་ནི་ཤེས་རི་བྱུང་)
2a The students in our class are either too big or too small.

2b The robes in that shop are either too big or too small; not one is suitable.

3 The two friends were pleased to see each other again.

3a The yaks are pleased to go to the spring on hot summer days.

3b I was delighted to hear from you.

4 The suit was so expensive that he couldn’t buy it.

4a His works were so difficult that almost no one could understand them.

4b The pork was so fat that he couldn’t eat it.

5 We were so busy talking that I forgot to pay!

5a My girlfriend was so delighted in meeting me that she kissed me several times.

5b I am so busy collecting these folktales that I hardly have any time to relax.

Grammar

1 The Past Perfect Tense རིག་འབྲི་འདས་

---

193
1a I moved to Hong Kong after I had finished middle school.

1b He remembered that he had chosen a new jacket, but he hadn’t paid for it.

1c When I returned to my home my guests had already gone.

2a It was so cold in the mountains that many yaks were frozen / froze to death.

2b The horse was so fast that no one could recognize who the rider was.

2c They scolded her so badly that she nearly cried.
Unit 22 At the doctor's

Useful expressions

1 I don't feel very well.
2 I have got a headache and a cough.
3 There's something wrong with the radio.
4 It's nothing serious.
5 You'll be all right/well soon.
6 Take this medicine twice a day.

Text Explanation

1 You'd better stay in bed till tomorrow.
   1a You'd better drive the animals to the spring in winter.
   1b You'd better shear the sheep twice a year.
2 Perhaps she's caught a cold.
   2a Perhaps I've got a serious fever.
   2b Perhaps this machine has got a problem.
3 You'd better not go to school.
   3a You'd better not leave the yaks alone in the mountains in the winter.
   3b You'd better not miss the rite.
4 Have you taken his temperature?
   4a Taking one's temperature is something that the nurses usually do.
4b I would like to take my temperature when I have a cold.

5 His temperature seems to be all right.

5a He seems to be satisfied with his success in his studies.

5b The old woman in the picture seems to be my grandmother.

6 How long has he been like this?

6a He has been in poor health like this for two weeks.

6b I have been to America several times.

Grammar

1 The Present Perfect Tense.

| The students have finished my homework. | སྐྱེལ་བྱེ་བྱེུ་བྱེ

| She hasn't eaten lunch. | སྐྱེལ་བྱེ་བྱེུ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ

| She has been to Tibet several times. | སྐྱེལ་བྱེ་བྱེུ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ

| I have eaten at that restaurant only one time. | སྐྱེལ་བྱེ་བྱེུ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ

| I have lived in this city since 1989. | སྐྱེལ་བྱེ་བྱེུ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ

| I have studied music for one year. | སྐྱེལ་བྱེ་བྱེུ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ

| "for since" | སྐྱེལ་བྱེ་བྱེུ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེ་བྱེུ་བྱེ_196
2 How to use *since* and *for*. *Since*で"for"が使用されるとき "Since"で"for"が使用されるとき

2a I have lived in America since 1983. 1983年アメリカに住み続けている。

2b He has learned music since June. 6月から音楽を学んでいる。

"For"で"since"が使用されるとき

2c I have been here for ten minutes. ここに10分間滞在している。

2d I have lived here for two years. ここに2年間住んでいた。

3 Using the Simple Past versus the Present Perfect. 簡単過去と完成過去の使い分け

3a I was in Japan ten years ago / in 1990 / when I was a child. 10年前/1990年/子供の頃に日本にいた。

3b I have been in Japan several times / one time. 日本に何度も/一度滞在している。

4 The Infinitive. Infinitiveで"to", "-es", "-ing"が使われるとき

4a He didn’t know whom to ask / what to do. 誰に質問するのを忘れ / 何をするのを忘れ

4b She doesn’t know where to go / how to get to your tent. どこに行こうか / どう到達するかを忘れ

4c I have something to give you. 何か与えることに決意

4d A: Do you want anything to drink? 何か飲みたいですか？

B: Yes, some tea, please! はい、お茶をお願い！
Unit 23 The football match

Useful Expressions

1 Did you have a good journey?
2 Play as well as you can.
3 Keep on chanting.
4 I feel afraid of forests and mountains when the nights are dark and stormy.
5 Please come to class on time.
6 Who is on the team?

Text Explanation

1 It’s a long time since we met last!
1a It has been a long time since they built this temple.
1b A long time has passed since their divorce.

2 You are just in time for the football match.
2a Being on time is something that the students should do.
2b You are just in time to have some hot mutton!

3 The team has already been chosen.
3a Roads have already been made into remote areas.
3b A Tibetan style house has been built in this city.
4 Either Weihua or Ann may be on the team. 

4a We have to get there either tonight or tomorrow. 

4b It’s necessary to study one foreign language or computer science. 

5 We were playing against No. 64 Middle School. 

5a Doing something against your patients’ wishes is not good. 

5b The huge waves are beating violently against the shore. 

6 It was a draw when we played last time. 

6a The two archery teams competed all afternoon but at dusk it was still a draw. 

6b They played two games of chess and both were draws. 

7 By the end of the match, they had kicked two goals and we had kicked four. 

7a By the end of last year, we had selected a new village head. 

7b By the end of this term, we will make good progress in our English study. 

8 We did as he told us and won the first place in the league. 

8a We danced as she taught and got a gold medal in the competition.
8b If you do as old people say, you may succeed.

Grammar

The Past Perfect Tense.

The foreigner said he had never seen such beautiful scenery.

By the end of last year, they had sold more than three thousand yaks.
Useful Expressions

1. My hometown is located at the foot of that snowy mountain.
2. That tall mountain peak is always covered with mist.
3. I am really interested in learning traditional music.
4. He enjoys reading novels.
5. Herdsmen spend most of the time on taking care of the livestock.
6. It takes a long time to draw a painting well.
7. None of the villagers can speak Chinese.
8. There are hardly any Tibetans who can speak three languages.

Text Explanation

1. How often do you write?
   1a. How often do you wear your Tibetan robe?
   1b. How often do you go on dates with your girlfriend?
2. Though I like writing to my pen friend, it takes a lot of time.
   2a. Most Tibetans like eating fat meat, though it's not very healthy.
2b Though his horse was the best, he didn’t win the race.

3 From Sydney we flew over a line of mountains in the southeast.

3a After you have passed over a huge line of mountains, you'll come to a lovely lake.

3b That big statue is over three hundred years old.

4 But after we left the mountains behind us, there was hardly a cloud in the sky.

4a He could hardly say anything when he heard the bad news.

4b After the snowstorm there were hardly any sheep left behind.

5 Lower down, at the foot of the Ayers Rock, most of the ground is covered with forest and grass.

5a Lower down, at the foot of the snow mountain, the land is covered with white sheep and black yaks.

5b His hands are covered with blood every time he butchers a sheep.

6 I must stop writing now, as I have rather a lot of work to do.

6a I must go home now, as my mother is waiting for me.

6b You must stop talking now, as I’m bored listening to you.
7 You can see from my photograph that I have a big smile and long hair.

7a I can tell from this essay that this author’s writing is rather good.

7b You can see from this goat’s long horns that it is quite old.

Grammar

1. Using "though." || Though

"Though"借款实意为但是尽管如此，尽管在许多情况下表示一种让步关系，但在句中使用时，"though"通常用于引出一种让步条件，表达一种让步或者转折关系。

1a He failed the exam though he had studied very hard.

1b Though my family is neither too rich nor too poor, it is a happy family.

2. Using "either... or..." || Either... or...

Either ... or...借款实意为或者，或者，表示一种选择关系。在使用时，通常用于引出两种或者多种选择，表达一种选择关系。

2a You can give either the yellow or the white scarf to the lama.

2b You may use either your left hand or your right hand.

3. Using "neither... nor..." || Neither... nor...

Neither...nor借款实意为既不...也不...，表示一种否定关系。在使用时，通常用于引出一种否定条件，表达一种否定关系。

3a Neither smoking nor drinking is allowed in this school.

3b They have neither warm clothes to put on nor enough food to eat.
a bottle of  | རུ་བོད་| I want a bottle of beer. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་བོད་
a cup of  | རུ་བོད་| I want a cup of tea. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
a / er; ə/  | རུ་བོད་| A boy fell down and cried this morning. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
a few  | རུ་བོད་| Only a few students study hard. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
a glass of  | རུ་བོད་| He wants a glass of water. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
a little  | རུ་བོད་| I want a little sugar. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
a lot of  | རུ་བོད་| He has a lot of money. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
a piece of  | རུ་བོད་| Please give me a piece of beef. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
a slice of  | རུ་བོད་| He ate a slice of bread with butter. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
able  /әrd/ | རུ་བོད་| 1 She was not able to go home. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
about  /ә'baut/ | རུ་བོད་| 1 He knows a lot about history. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
        | རུ་བོད་| 2 I will be away for about ten days. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
above  /ә'baV/ | རུ་བོད་| The picture is above your head. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
accept  /ә'k'sept/ | རུ་བོད་| I accept the invitation to have dinner with them. རུ་བོད་
        | རུ་བོད་| There was an accident on the road yesterday. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
        | རུ་བོད་| There was an accident on the road yesterday. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
accident  /ә'ksidәnt/ | རུ་བོད་| There was an accident on the road yesterday. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
accuse  /ә'kju:z/ | རུ་བོད་| Don't accuse him of cheating. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
across  /ә'krәs/ | རུ་བོད་| Be careful when you walk across the road.
        | རུ་བོད་| 1 She knows how to act like a queen. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
        | རུ་བོད་| 2 I fell asleep during the play’s third act. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
actor  /ә'ktә/ | རུ་བོད་| The actor had a big part in the play. རུ་བོད་ལུང་ལུང་ལུང་བོད་
add /æd/ | which . Please add these numbers.
adress /ə'dres/ | which is your new address.

His address made all the students happy.

admit /əd'mit/ | She had to admit she didn't know how to cook.

advise /ə'dvaɪz/ | I like to advise students on their careers.

I like to travel by aeroplane.

The weather had a serious affect on his mood.

We are afraid of our teacher.

After he left I went to sleep.

We have class in the afternoon.

Please say the new words again.

The ladder leaned against the wall.

What is your age? My body began to age quickly after I reached the age of forty.

Did you buy the ticket at the travel agency?

Aggression is a very strong emotion.

The ladder leaned against the wall.

I agree with my mother that I should finish my education.

Agriculture is the main business in the rural areas.

Ah yes, that is correct.

She came to his aid when he was sick.
aim /əɪm/ | འབུམ། | It is my aim to become a doctor. ཤེས་བུ་འབུམ། འབུམ་སྐྱེན་བྱུགས།
air /eə/ | ཁན་པ། | The air is cold. ཁན་པ་གངས་པ།
airport /ˈeəpɔːt/ | ཁན་པ་རིགས། | The airport is a busy place during the summer. ཁན་པ་གནས་ཁྱབ་ནས།
alive /əˈlaɪv/ | འབྱུགས་པ་བྱུགས། | If they are breathing, they are still alive. འབྱུགས་པ་མེད་པའི་ཐེག་པ་བོད།
al /əl/ | 1 འབྲོ་ 2 འབྲོ། | 1 I played basketball all afternoon. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་དུ་ཐེག་པ། 2 All of you are Chinese. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་ཁྱབ་བསྐྱུས།
all day /əl dæ/ | འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་ | I studied all day yesterday. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་དུ་ཐེག་པ་ཁྱབ་བསྐྱུས།
all night /əl nɑːt/ | འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་མི་ཐེག་པ་ | I slept all night. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་མི་ཐེག་པ་ཁྱབ་བསྐྱུས།
all right /əl rɑːt/ | འབྲོ་ | All right, you can come with us. འབྲོ་མི་ཐེག་པ་སྐྱེབ་བསྐྱུས།
all the time /əl ðə tɛm/ | འབྲོ་ | I try to speak English all the time. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་པ་མི་ཐེག་པ་ཁྱབ་བསྐྱུས།
ammost /əˈmɑːst/ | 1 ཐིག་ 2 ཐིག་ | 1 I almost missed the train. ཐིག་ཁྱབ་བསྐྱུས། 2 ཐིག་དེ་ཐེག་པ་མི་ཐེག་བསྐྱུས།
alone /əˈləʊn/ | འབྲོ་གཉིས་ | I was alone all of last week. འབྲོ་གཉིས་།
along /əˈlɔŋ/ | འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་ | Please sing along with me. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་།
already /əˈrɛdi/ | འབྲོ་ | I already finished my homework. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་ཁྱབ་བསྐྱུས།
also /əˈsəʊ/ | འབྲོ་ | She also knew how to speak English. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་སྐྱེབ་བསྐྱུས།
although /əˈləʊð/ | འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་ | Although he was short, he was very strong. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་ལོག་སྐྱེབ་བསྐྱུས།
always /ˈælwez/ | འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་ | I always like to eat ice cream. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་ལོག་སྐྱེབ་བསྐྱུས།
am /æm/ | འབྲོ། | I am Tibetan. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་
amend /əˈmɛnd/ | 1 འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་གཉིས་ 2 འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ། | 1 You must make amends if you want to say you are sorry for what you did. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་སྐྱེབ་བསྐྱུས། 2 He wanted to amend the contract. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་སྐྱེབ་བསྐྱུས།
America | འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་ འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་ | America is a country. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་སྐྱེབ་བསྐྱུས།
American /ˈɛmərɪkən/ | འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་ འབྲོ་འབྲོ་ | My teacher is an American. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་སྐྱེབ་བསྐྱུས།
ammunition /ˌɛmjuˈnɪʃn/ | འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་ འབྲོ་འབྲོ་ | They lost the war because they ran out of ammunition. འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་འབྲོ་སྐྱེབ་བསྐྱུས།
among /əˈmʌŋ/ | অন্যমতে | From among all the flowers, the blue ones were the most beautiful. || অনেকগুলো ফুলের মধ্যে পীরাতুল দেখা যায়।

amount /əˈmɔ:nt/ | মাত্র জনপ্রিয় | She told me to buy a large amount of sugar. || তিনি বললেন যে আমি জমিতের বড় পরিমাণে গাছ খেয়ে নিয়ে আসি।

ancient /ˈemənt/ | পুরনো | Ancient culture is an interesting topic for study. || পুরনো সাহিত্য একটি আকর্ষণীয় বিষয় যা পড়া ভাল।

and /ænd, ənd/ | এবং | Bill and Mary are Canadian. || বিল ও মেরি কanadian।

anger /ˈæŋɡər/ | বিক্ষোভ | Anger can destroy friendships. || ক্রুদ্ধতার কারণে দোষজ সম্পর্ক ধ্বংস হতে পারে।

animal /ˈænɪml/ | প্রাণী | There was a dead animal by the road. || সড়কের পাশে একটি মারা গেছে প্রাণী দেখা গেল।

anniversary /ˌænɪˈvɜːri/ | স্মরনের দিন | They had a party for their tenth wedding anniversary. || তিনি তাদের দশম বিবাহ সাক্ষরণের সাংবল্যে একটি পার্টি দিয়েছিলেন।

announce /əˈnɔ:ns/ | বিজ্ঞাপন করা | They will announce the results of the test tomorrow. || তারা যে পর্যায়ের পরীক্ষার ফলাফল তাদের প্রতিদিন জানাতে আসলেন।

another /əˈðər/ | অপর একটি | Please have another piece of bread. || অপর একটিচুলের খেয়ে নিন।

answer /ˈænsər/ | উত্তর | 1. What is the answer to this question? || এই প্রশ্নের উত্তর কি? ।

2. I can’t answer that question. || আমি সে প্রশ্ন উত্তর দেওয়া করতে পারি না।

any /eni/ | কোন | I don't have any money. || আমি কোন ধানার যোগ্য নেই।

anybody /enɪˈbɒdi/ | কাহোন | Does anybody want to go to the store with me? || কোন ভিতনাদের সাথে মিতুল যেতে চান? সাহায্য করবেন।

anything /eniˈθɪŋ/ | কোন কিছু | Do you want to eat anything more? || আপনি কোন কিছু আর খাবোন চান? সাহায্য করবেন।

apologise (apologize) /əˈpɒlədʒaɪz/ | মাফিয়া | She didn't want to apologise for her mistake. || তিনি তার ভুল করতে চাইনি।

appeal /əˈpiːl/ | আংশিক | 1. Please appeal to your mother for permission to go with me. || অপেল তার মা কন্বান।

2. My appeal fell on deaf ears. || আমির আলোকে মা তার কন্বান।

appear /əˈpɪə/ | দৃষ্টিমাত্র | The sun did not appear from behind the clouds. || তারা মারা দেখা যায় নি।

apply /əˈplaɪ/ | অন্তর্ভুক্তি | Please apply what you have learned. || প্রবেশ করুন কিছু নিয়ে যা আপনি জান।

appoint /əˈpɔɪnt/ | চিন্তর | I will appoint him to be the class monitor. || আমি তাকে দায়িত্ব প্রদান করবো।

207
arrive /ə'rɪv/ | আরাইভে | What time will your mother arrive at the bus station?

April /'eppral/ | আপ্রেল | April is in spring.

are /aə/ | আর | 1. Are you American? 2. We are Chinese.

area /eərə/ | এরিঅ | The grasslands cover a very large area.

argue /ə'ɡju:/ | আরিয়ু | Don't argue with your teacher.

arm /a:m/ | অম | Your right arm is stronger than your left arm.

arms /a:mz/ | 1. অমজ | 2. They took up arms against the enemy.

army /'a:mI/ | অম্য | The army was very tired after fighting the battle.

around /ə'rəund/ | আরুন্ড | Please walk around the playground.

arrest /ə'rest/ | 1. অরেস্ট | 2. He said to the policeman, "Don’t arrest me, I didn’t do anything wrong." After his arrest he was put in prison.

art /a:t/ | এর্ট | He wanted to study art in school.

as /æz; əz/ | আস | 1. He looked as if he was sick. 2. He fell as he was walking down the street.

ash /æʃ/ | অশ | There is a lot of ash in the stove.

ask /ɑːsk/ | অস্ক | Ask me a question.

asleep /ə'sli:p/ | আস্লিপ | I was asleep when she telephoned.

assist /ə'sist/ | আস্টিস | He was asked to assist the teacher in class.

at /at; æt/ | এট | I usually eat lunch at 12:30 p.m.
at a bad time | འབྲི་བཤད་ཆེན་པོ་ི་ལུགས། || I’m sorry, you have come at a bad time.

at a good time | འབྲི་གཞན་ཆེན་པོ་ི་ལུགས། || Let’s meet later at a good time for both of

us. སྐྱིད་མེད་ེན་པོ་ི་ལུགས།

at first /ˈfɜːst/ | སྤྱད་|| At first please speak to me in simple English.

at home /haʊm/ | ཤིང་|| I am at home today. ཤིང་མོ་སྐྱེམས་སྐྱེལ་

at last /lɑːst/ | བོད་|| At last I was able to speak English well.

at a bad time | འབྲི་བཤད་ཆེན་པོ་ི་ལུགས། || I’m sorry, you have come at a bad time.

at a good time | འབྲི་གཞན་ཆེན་པོ་ི་ལུགས། || Let’s meet later at a good time for both of

us. སྐྱིད་མེད་ེན་པོ་ི་ལུགས།

at first /ˈfɜːst/ | སྤྱད་|| At first please speak to me in simple English.

at home /haʊm/ | ཤིང་|| I am at home today. ཤིང་མོ་སྐྱེམས་སྐྱེལ་

at last /lɑːst/ | བོད་|| At last I was able to speak English well.

at a bad time | འབྲི་བཤད་ཆེན་པོ་ི་ལུགས། || I’m sorry, you have come at a bad time.

at a good time | འབྲི་གཞན་ཆེན་པོ་ི་ལུགས། || Let’s meet later at a good time for both of

us. སྐྱིད་མེད་ེན་པོ་ི་ལུགས།

at first /ˈfɜːst/ | སྤྱད་|| At first please speak to me in simple English.
automobile /ˈɔːtəməbli/ | ངན་འབྲིས། || He hopes to purchase an automobile next year.

autonomous /ˈɔːtəmənas/ | ო་ཐོམ། || Yulshul Autonomous Prefecture is in southern Qinghai Province.

autumn /ˈɔːtam/ | བོད། || In autumn tree leaves turn yellow.

awake /ˈəweIk/ | རྟགས། || He wasn't awake when I arrived.

award /ˈɔːwɔd/ | ཀུན། | She got a special award for being a good student. We will award the best students with cash gifts this afternoon.

B

baby /ˈbeibi/ | འཁོར། | My baby is two months old. I'm now an adult so don't baby me.

back /bæk/ | བོད། | At six o'clock, go back home. My back is painful. He kept a lot of empty boxes in the back of his shop.

bad /bæd/ | ཀུན། | He is a bad student. Her English is bad.

bag /bæɡ/ | མོ། || My bag is blue.

ball /bɔ:l/ | བོད། || We lost our ball.

balloon /bəˈluːn/ | འཁོར། || They gave her a balloon as a gift.

bank /bæŋk/ | འཁོར། | We need to go to the bank to get some money.

barley /ˈbeɪli/ | ཀུན། | I like bread made of barley.

base /beɪs/ | བོད། || The statue rested on a base made of wood.

basket /ˈbɑːskɪt/ | མོ། || Put the grass in the basket.

basketball /ˈbɑːskɪtbɔːl/ | འཁོར། | That new basketball costs more than I can afford.

bathroom /ˈbɑːtʃərm; -rɒm/ | འཁོར། || Where is the bathroom?

battle /ˈbætl/ | འཁོར། || The stronger army usually wins the battle.
beach /biːf/ || It's always nice to spend the day at the beach.

beat /biːt/ || 'That disco music has a strong beat. He was very angry so he beat the horse.

beautiful /ˈbjuːtɪfl/ || Those are very beautiful flowers.

beauty /ˈbjuːtɪ/ || Beauty is a common topic of poets.

because /bɪˈkɒz/ || I don't want to go outside because it is raining.

become /brəˈkʌm/ || His shirt will become grey when it becomes old.

bed /bed/ || The bed is not new.

bedroom /ˈbedruːm/ || My bedroom is this room.

beef /biːf/ || They bought a lot of beef at the market.

beer /bɪə/ || This is a bottle of beer.

before /brɪˈfɔː/ || He asked the young women to come and dance before him.

beg /beg/ || She needed to beg for money.

begin /bɪˈɡɪn/ || Please begin reading now.

behind /brɪˈhænd/ || Who is that behind you?

believe /brɪˈliːv/ || I believe that tomorrow it will snow.

bell /bel/ || Our class is over when the bell rings.

belong /brəˈlɒŋ/ || That cow does not belong to that family.

best /best/ || This is the best meat I've ever tasted.

betray /brəˈtreɪ/ || It is not good to betray a friend.

better /ˈbɛtə/ || Her English was better than his.
I want to sit in between those two girls. Let’s bike to town and buy some groceries.

This is my brother’s bicycle.

My grandmother is blind. He was blind to all his wife’s faults.

If you cut yourself you will bleed.

If you eat too many apples your stomach will become bloated.

The cement block fell from the roof and narrowly missed hitting her on the head.

Don’t block the entrance to the school.

Blood is red.

I don’t have a yellow blouse.

With a single blow of his big hammer he killed the yak.
The necklace is made out of yak bone.

The sky is blue today.

The boat is on the lake.

His body felt cold in the wind.

The book is small.

His speech was quite brief.
bright /bræt/ || The light was so bright that I had to shut my eyes. ฉันต้องปิดตา

bring /brɪŋ/ || What are you going to bring to the party? เชิญยินดีเข้าร่วมงานเลี้ยง

broadcast /ˈbrəʊdskɑːst/ || The television will broadcast a soccer game tonight at eight o’clock. ทีวีจะถ่ายทอดสดเกมฟุตบอลคืนนี้ที่แปดโมง

broken /ˈbrəʊkən/ || The bottle is broken. ขวดแตก

broom /bruːm/ || Our classroom has a broom. ห้องเรียนมีกวาด

brother /ˈbrʌðə/ || He is my brother. เขายกับฉัน

build /bɪld/ || It is not easy to build a house. อยู่ยาก

building /ˈbɪldɪŋ/ || I saw a very tall building in town. ฉันเห็นอาคารที่สูงมากในเมือง

built /bɪlt/ || My father built a nice house for our family. คุณพ่อสร้างบ้านให้ครอบครัว

bull /bʊl/ || The bull was standing alone in the field. นกแกะCALLứcอยู่คนเดียวใน.Fields

bullet /ˈbʊlɪt/ || That gun only has one bullet in it. เที่ยวสถานที่จะเช็คปืน

burn /bɜːrn/ || The paper quickly began to burn. กระดาษเริ่มไหม้

burst /bɜːst/ || The sunlight burst through the clouds after the rainstorm. แสงแดดทะลุเมฆหลังจากพายุฝน

bury /ˈbərɪ/ || We had to bury the dog after it died. เราต้องฝังสุนัขหลังจากตาย

bus /bʌs/ || Will you ride the bus to town? คุณจะขึ้นรถเมล์ไปเมือง

bus station /ˈbʌstʃteɪʃn/ || I will buy my bus ticket at the bus station. ฉันจะซื้อตั๋วรถเมล์ที่สถานีบัส

business /ˈbɪznəs/ || He went to town to do some business. เขาไปเมืองเพื่อดел/etc.

busy /ˈbɪzi/ || They are very busy working in the field at harvest time. พวกเขาทำงานอย่างชุ่มชื้น

but /bət/ || You can come with us but you don't have to. คุณสามารถมาด้วยเรานะ แต่อย่าใจไม่ร้อน

butter /ˈbʌtə/ || ค่ะ || Please put more butter in my tea. คุณต้องจะใส่เนยมากขึ้น

buy /bɔɪ/ || I will buy a book. ฉันจะซื้อหนังสือ

by /bɪ/ || เธอคุณไม่ร้อน.split

by the way /bəˈdiːrweɪ/ || By the way, I forgot to tell you about class
yesterday. 

bye /bai/ | বাই | "Bye. See you this afternoon." 

C
cake /keik/ | কেইক | I like cake. 
calf /kafl/ | সাইল | The calf was very hungry. 
call /kɔl/ | কল | 1Let’s make a call on our teacher this Sunday afternoon. 2I will call you on the phone tonight. 
calm /kɔm/ | ক্যামেল | The lake was calm after the storm. 
camera /'kæmərə/ | ক্যামেরা | I want to take a picture with my new camera. 
can /kæn; kən/ | ক্যান | 1I opened the can of beans with my knife. 2I can speak English. 3Can you come to my home now? 
Canada /'kænədə/ | কেনেডি | Canada is near America. 
cancel /'kænsl/ | কেন্সল | They had to cancel class because the teacher was ill. 
cancer /'kænsər/ | কেনসার | Cancer is a serious illness. 
cannon /'kænən/ | কেনেন | The cannon was pointed at the enemy. 
car /kaər/ | কার | That car cost a lot of money. 
care /keər/ | কেয়ার | 1I will always be grateful for the care you showed me when I was your student. 2We need to care for the sheep. 
careful /'keəfl/ | কেয়াফল | Be careful when you cross the road. 
carefully /'keəfoli/ | কেয়াফলি | We carefully walked along the narrow path. 
carrot /'kærət/ | কেরেট | Carrots grow under the ground. 
carry /'kæri/ | কারি | Can you carry this bag? 
case /keis/ | কেস | 1That is a very big case he is carrying.
The cat ate some bread.
The boy didn't catch the ball.
There are many cattle grazing on the grassland.

What is the cause of your illness?
I hope I didn't cause you any trouble.

Let's celebrate your birthday.
The store is located in the centre of town.

He wants to become chairman of the committee.
If she works hard she will be a champion basketball player.
I'm sorry I didn't have a chance to call you.

The shopkeeper charges too much for these apples.
The dog chases the cat.
The cake is cheap.
Students should not cheat on their tests.
Children are in the room.

May I pay for these items with a check?

The girls cheered on their friends, encouraging them to finish the race.

The atmosphere is full of many different chemicals.

Chicken is easy to cook.

I'll need to ask the village chief.

The chief reason I don’t want to go is that I’m tired.

The child is learning English.

Children are in the room.

China has many nationalities.

Most people who live in China speak Chinese.

She will choose a nice dress to wear today.

Some people like to go to church to pray.

All my friends want to go to the cinema to see a film.

All join hands and make a circle around the tree.

Let’s circle the holy mountain this summer.

He is a helpful man and a good citizen.

The city is many miles away from here.

Before he was a soldier, now he is a civilian.
clash /klæʃ/ || From the look on their faces, it seems their ideas clash.

class /klaːs/ || 1When do we have our Chinese class?

classmate /ˈklɑːsmeɪt/ || She saw her classmate on the way to school.

classroom /ˈklɑːsruːm/ || Where is our classroom?

clean /kliːn/ || 1The classroom is not clean. 2Please clean the classroom.

cleanest /ˈkliːnest/ || This is the cleanest school I have ever seen.

cleanse /ˈklenz/ || It's a good idea to cleanse a wound with fresh water.

clear /klɪər/ || 1On a clear day you can see far. 2Let’s clear away all the dishes from the table.

clever /ˈklevər/ || She was very clever at math.

clock /klɒk/ || The clock in our classroom is broken.

close /kləʊz/ || Close the door.

closed /kləʊzd/ || I closed the window.

cloth /klaʊθ/ || She sewed the dress from a piece of cloth.

clothes /ˈklaʊðz/ || Where are your clothes?

cloud /ˈklaʊd/ || There is not one cloud in the sky.

cloudy /ˈklaʊdi/ || Before it rains it is usually cloudy.

colour /ˈkʌlər/ || I closed the window.

class /klaːs/ || They burn coal to keep the office warm.

coast /ˈkoʊst/ || Someday I will go swimming on the coast of France.
driver will turn off the engine and then we will coast down.  

coat /kəʊt/ | ¹koʊt ²kaut | ¹My coat is too small. ²Let’s put a new coat of paint on the walls.

coffee /ˈkɒfi/ | ¹koʊfi ²kofi | Coffee without sugar tastes bitter.

cold /kəʊld/ | ¹koʊld ²kald | ¹I don’t like cold winter weather. ²He is taking medicine for his bad cold.

collect /kəˈlekt/ | ¹koʊlɛkt ²kəlɛkt | That man has come to collect the taxes.

colour (color) /ˈkʌloʊ/ | ¹kʌloʊ ²kʌrəl | What colour is your coat?

come /kəm/ | ¹kəm ²kʌm | Please come here.

come in /kəm ˈɪn/ | ¹kəm ˈɪn ²kʌm ˈɪn | Please come in.

come over /ˈkɑm ˈəʊvər/ | ¹kɑm ˈəʊvər ²kəm ˈəʊvər | I want my friend to come over to my house tonight.

comedy /ˈkɒmədi/ | ¹kəmədi ²kəmədi | I like to listen to comedy programmes on the radio.

common /ˈkəʊmən/ | ¹kəmən ²kəmən | Colds are a common illness in the winter.

company /ˈkʌmpəni/ | ¹kʌmpəni ²kʌmpəni | Many people work for that electric company.

compete /kəmˈpiːt/ | ¹kəmˈpiːt ²kəmˈpiːt | He doesn't like to compete with his friends.

computer /kəmˈpjuːtər/ | ¹kəmˈpjuːtər ²kəmˈpjuːtər | Computers help people do many kinds of work.

concern /kənˈsɜːn/ | ¹kənˈsɜːn ²kənˈsɜːn | She showed her concern by coming by for a visit.

condition /kənˈdɪʃn/ | ¹kənˈdɪʃn ²kənˈdɪʃn | That truck is in very bad condition.

conductor /kənˈdʌktər/ | ¹kənˈdʌktər ²kənˈdʌktər | You will need to ask the conductor for a ticket.

conflict /kənˈflikt/ | ¹kənˈflikt ²kənˈflikt | The war was started by a small conflict.
congratulate /ˈkɒŋtrəˌleɪt/ || We must congratulate him on his new job.

connect /ˈkənˈnekt/ || Can you connect these telephone wires to this pole?

consider /ˈkənˈsɜːr/ || She hopes to be considered for the teaching position.

contain /ˈkənˈteɪn/ || This bowl contains fruit.

continent /ˈkɒntrənt/ || One has to travel from one continent to another by boat.

continue /ˈkənˈtɪnjuː/ || She wants to continue studying English.

control /ˈkənˈtroʊl/ || The young teacher could not control the students.

convention /ˈkɑːnˈvɛnʃən/ || A lot of business people will be at the convention.

cook /kʊk/ || 1 I like to cook for my friends.

cool /kuːl/ || 1 Summer in Ziling is cool, not hot. 2 She can't eat the food until it cools off.

copy /ˈkɒpi/ || 1 The handwritten copy of the manuscript was very old.

correct /ˈkərɛkt/ || 1 Your answer is correct. 2 How long will it take you to correct your students’ homework?

cost /kɒst/ || How much do these apples cost?

cotton /ˈkɒtən/ || Where can we buy some cotton clothes?

could /kʊd; kʊd/ || Could you buy something for me?

count /ˈkɑʊnt/ || Please count the students in the classroom.

country /ˈkʌntrɪ/ || China is a very large country.

county /ˈkʌntri/ || This building belongs to the county administration.
There are many pear trees growing in the courtyard.

The old well cover needs to be replaced.

Be sure to cover the top of the water bucket.

I learned how to milk a cow when I was a child.

He deserves a lot of credit for the success of that project.

That boy got involved in a life of crime.

I love my father because he was never cruel to me.

The new road will cross my fields.

There was a big crowd standing outside the cinema.

If everyone crowds into the bus, we will be uncomfortable.

He said some very cruel words to his sister when he was angry.

I love my father because he was never cruel to me.

Make sure the potatoes don't crush the tomatoes in the bag.
Please don’t be sad and cry. Her loud cry of fear was heard far away.

The way people live is different in every culture.

What colour is this cup?

The doctors were working hard to find a cure for the disease.

This medicine will cure your disease.

That newspaper always reports the current news.

He got a severe shock from the strong electrical current.

The strong ocean current pulled the boat away from the shore.

Drinking butter tea is a Tibetan custom.

He cut down the tree with an axe.

My dad is thirty four.

They are building a big dam on the river.

We will dam up the river here in order to make a big lake.

How much damage did the drought cause to the crops this year?

The floods will damage the crops.

Many young people don’t like traditional dances, instead they prefer modern dances.

I learned how to dance when I was a child.

It looks like there is danger up ahead on the road.

The mountain path is dangerous.

At night it gets so dark outside. He gave her a dark angry look.
date /dɛrt/ | ɪθɛ 1ɪŋgərəd 2ˈtuːknəd, ʊrənə 3ˈtʌskənə || 1What is your birth date?

day /dɛt/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdeɪtə / ˈdɛtə || 1What day is today?

day-time /dɛrtəm/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdeɪtərə / ˈdeɪtəm || I go to school in the day-time.

dead /dɛd/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈded/ || We saw a dead animal on the side of the road.

dead /dɛd/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈded/ || After his long illness he became deaf.

deal /di:l/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdiːl/ || 1Buying the land for that price was a good deal.

dead /dɛd/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈded/ || 2I only deal in new goods, not in used goods.

dear /dɪə/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdiə || My dear wife is a teacher.

debate /dɪˈbeɪt/ s| 1ˈdiːbət 2ˈdibət || 1The smartest children won the school debate.

decide /dɪˈsaɪd/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdiːsaɪd 2ˈdɪsaɪd || 2She decided to go to town in the afternoon.

December /dɪˈsembər/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdɪsembər 2ˈdɪsəmbər || Christmas is in December.

degree /dɪˈɡriː/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdɪɡriː || 1I hope to get a degree from college someday.

date /dɛt/ | ɪθɛ 1ɪŋgərəd 2ˈtuːknəd, ʊrənə 3ˈtʌskənə || 1What is your birth date?

daughter /ˈdoːtə/ | ˈduːtə || My daughter is fourteen.

day /dɛt/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdeɪtə / ˈdɛtə || 1What day is today?

day-time /dɛrtəm/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdeɪtərə / ˈdeɪtəm || I go to school in the day-time.

dead /dɛd/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈded/ || We saw a dead animal on the side of the road.

dead /dɛd/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈded/ || After his long illness he became deaf.

deal /di:l/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdiːl/ || 1Buying the land for that price was a good deal.

deal /di:l/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdiːl/ || 2I only deal in new goods, not in used goods.

dear /dɪə/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdiə || My dear wife is a teacher.

debate /dɪˈbeɪt/ s| 1ˈdiːbət 2ˈdibət || 1The smartest children won the school debate.

decide /dɪˈsaɪd/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdiːsaɪd 2ˈdɪsaɪd || 2She decided to go to town in the afternoon.

December /dɪˈsembər/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdɪsembər 2ˈdɪsəmbər || Christmas is in December.

degree /dɪˈɡriː/ | ɪθɛ 1ˈdɪɡriː || 1I hope to get a degree from college someday.
delay /drˈleɪ/ | How long will the delay be? The snowstorm delayed the shipment of goods to the town.

delicious /dɪˈlɪʃəs/ | The food is delicious.

demand /dɪˈmænd/ | There is a great demand for meat in the market.

deny /dɪˈneɪ/ | He didn't want to deny his children an education.

depend /dɪˈpɛnd/ | The family depends on their cow for milk.

desert /ˈdezərt/ | It doesn't rain much in the desert.

desk /desk/ | Put the book on the desk.

destroy /dɪˈstrɔɪ/ | By mistake he destroyed some important papers.

details /ˈdiːtelz/ | Please give details about the accident.

devolve /dɪˈvəʊl/ | They need to develop plans to build the school.

diagram /ˈdaɪəɡræm/ | It is helpful to draw a diagram before building a house.

diary /ˈdɛəri/ | I write in my diary every morning.

did /dɪd/ | When did you graduate?

die /daɪ/ | Every year some people die of old age in that village.

difference /ˈdɪfrəns/ | What's the difference between Tibetan and English?

different /dɪˈfrænt/ | Tibetan and English are different languages.
difficult /drɪˈfɪkəlt/  |  दिफिकुल || Learning a new language is difficult.

dig /dɪg/  |  डिग || They had to dig a ditch for the water. डिग पूल बनाने के लिए खोदना पड़ा।
dinner /ˈdɪnər/  |  डिनर || We eat dinner at six o'clock every night.

dire /ˈdeɪrər/  |  डियर || There is a dire need for a hospital in that town.

direct /dɪˈrekt; ˈdɜrɪkt/  |  डिरेक्ट || He gave a very direct answer to my question. उसके प्रश्न पर अनुभागी के लिए सरल उत्तर दिया।
direction /dɪˈreksən; ˈdɪrɪkʃən/  |  डिरेक्शन || People come from every direction to the festival.

dirty /ˈdɜrty/  |  डार्टी || Her clothes are very dirty. उसका अपहरण ठंडा है।
disappear /dɪsəˈpɛər/  |  डिसापर || A rainbow disappears after a short time. रंगीन रेंडर काले हो जाता है।
disease /dɪˈziːz/  |  डाइजिस || Many animals died from a disease. फूलकाल प्रमुखतः रोगी के लिए मर गए।
dismiss /dɪsˈmɪs/  |  डिसमिस || The students will be dismissed from class one hour later. छात्रों को एक घंटे बाद बालाजी के लिए बाहर किया जाएगा।
dispute /dɪˈspjuːt; ˈdrɪspjuːt/  |  डिस्प्यूट || The dispute was about who owned the horse. विवाद राइट ने वाले होटल में किसका है॥
distance /ˈdɪstəns/  |  डिस्टेंस || My village is a long distance from town. मेरा गाँव शहर से दूरी है।
distant /ˈdɪstənt/  |  डिस्टेंट || The town is so distant that we can’t walk to it in one day. शहर अत्यंत दूरी है उसे एक दिन में बाहर नहीं जा सकते।
dive /dəv/  |  डाइव || The boy didn't know how to dive into the river. युवक नहीं
divide /ˈdɪvɪd/  |  डाइवड || The dormitory is divided into two sections. दौमोरी दो खंडों में से बाहर किया गया।
do /də; du:/  |  डो || Do you like English? आप अंग्रेजी में उपस्थित हैं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं नहीं
do my homework |  डौ माय होमवर्क || I do my homework in the evening. आप कोई भी बात कहता है।
do not | नस्करिस् || Do not answer the telephone.

do sports | अभ्यास च्या || I’m too busy studying to do sports this year.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the washing | धोतर घोड़े || I will do the washing today.

do the washing | धोतर घोड़े || I will do the washing today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

do the shopping | खरीदारी करे || I will do the shopping today.

 doctor /ˈdɒktər/ | 1 कॉचन || I’m sick so I’ll go see the doctor.

don’t /dɔnt/ | नस्करिस् || Don’t come home late.

door /ˈdɔːr/ | दर || Open the door.

doorbell /ˈdɔːrbɛl/ | दरबार || Please ring the doorbell.

down /daʊn/ | ऊँचा || I saw my friend walking down the road.

draft /draːft/ | 1 लैंग || The draft of your book needs a lot of work.

drum /drʌm/ | टिल || She told me about the dream she had last night.

dress /dres/ | एक || Her new dress was not expensive.

drink /drɪŋk/ | चाय || What is your favorite drink?

drive /draɪv/ | यात्रा || I like to go for drives in the countryside.
**driver** /drəvə/ | NELA|| Tell the bus driver to stop over there.

**drown** /draʊn/ | 191|| If you don't know how to swim you can drown.

**drugs** /draʊɡs/ | 191|| Doctors use drugs to fight infections.

**dry** /dri/ | 191|| These clothes are not dry, they are wet.

**duck** /dʌk/ | 191|| There were many ducks swimming in the lake.

**dumpling** /dʌmplɪŋ/ (boiled stuffed dumpling) | 191|| How do you cook dumplings?

**during** /dʒʊəriŋ/ | 191|| They all work hard during harvest time.

**dust** /dʌst/ | 191|| There is so much dust on the road.

**duty** /djuːti/ | 191|| It was her duty to watch the school children.

**each** /iːtʃ/ | 191|| Each student had to write a paper.

**ear** /ɪə/ | 191|| She cut her ear when she fell down.

**early** /ˈɜːli/ | 191|| He gets up early everyday.

**earn** /ɜːn/ | 191|| They earn a lot of money for their work.

**earth** /ɜːθ/ | 191|| The earth is round.

**earthquake** /ˈɜːθkwɛrk/ | 191|| The earthquake killed many animals and people.

**ease** /iːz/ | 191|| She danced with a special grace and ease.

**easily** /ˈiːzəli/ | 191|| He was able to learn English easily.
**east** /iːst/  || The school is located east of the village centre.

**easy** /ˈɛzi/  || It is not easy to learn English.

**eat** /iːt/  || The family likes to eat together.

**educate** /ɪˈdjuːkət/  || Books are helpful when educating students.

**economy** /ɪˈkɒnəmi/  || The economy has a big influence on the life of the people.

**edge** /edʒ/  || Don't walk so close to the edge of the cliff.

**edible root** /ˈedəbl ruːt/  || Rice, sugar, yak butter, and edible roots cooked together are delicious.

**effect** /ɪˈfekt/  || The increase in rain had a positive effect on crop growth.

**effort** /ˈɛfət/  || A lot of effort is required in learning a language.

**egg** /eg/  || The chicken laid only one egg last week.

**eight** /ˈeɪt/  || He works eight hours every day.

**eighteen** /ˈeɪtɪn/  || She graduated from school when she was eighteen years old.

**eighth** /ˈeɪtθ/  || This was the eighth time he tried.

**eighty** /ˈeɪti/  || My grandmother is eighty years old.

**either** /ˈeɪðə; ˈiːðə/  || He either wants to get a job or go to school.

**elect** /ɪˈlekt/  || When will we elect the class monitor?

**electricity** /ɪˌlekˈtrɪsətɪ/  || Electricity can help improve living conditions.

**element** /ˈelmənt/  || Rain, snow, and wind are all elements of weather.

**elephant** /ˈelɪfənt/  || An elephant is a large animal.
eleven /'tlevn/ | She begins to prepare lunch at eleven o'clock.

embassy /'embæsi/ | They went to the embassy to get a visa.

emotion /'emən/ | Hate, greed, and envy are powerful emotions.

employ /ɪm'plaɪ/ | The factory employs many people.

empty /'empti/ | The house was empty after they moved away.

end /end/ | Did you read the book all the way to the end?

enemy /'enəmi/ | The army fought against the enemy.

energy /enədʒi/ | The boys on the basketball team have a lot of energy.

enforce /ɪn'fɔːs/ | The police enforce the laws.

genius /'dʒiːnəs/ | An Englishman came to visit our school yesterday.

engine /'endʒɪn/ | The truck had a problem with its engine.

engineer /'endʒɪnər/ | My father is an engineer.

English /ɪnˈglɪʃ/ | I enjoy learning English.

Englishman /ɪnˈglɪʃmən/ | An Englishman came to visit our school yesterday.

Englishmen /ɪnˈglɪʃmən/ | There aren't any Englishmen in my town.

enjoy /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ | She will enjoy buying a new dress.

enjoy yourself | I hope you will enjoy yourself at the party.

enough /ɪnˈʌf/ | He didn't get enough food to eat.

enter /ˈentə/ | They can enter the building through the front door.

event /ˈɪvent/ | The people work hard to protect the event.
equal /ˈiːkwəl/ | _MARK | || The students all shared the cleaning job equally.

equipment /ɪˈkwɪpmənt/ | .isActive || We need to repair the telephone equipment.

escape /ˈeskeɪp/ | 1/ˈɪskeɪp/ | 2/ˈeskeɪp/ | 1| The wife’s escape from her cruel husband’s control is a familiar theme in novels. 2The mouse couldn't escape from the hawk's claws.

especially /ɪˈspeʃəli/ | 1/ˈɪspəʃəli/ | I especially like the colour blue.

establish /ɪˈstæblɪʃ/ | 1/ˈɪstæblɪʃ/ | They want to establish a market on that corner.

even /ˈiːvn/ | 1/ˈiːvn| || I don't even know how to drive a car.

ever /ˈevər/ | 1/ˈevər/ | She doesn’t ever want to leave home.

every /ˈevri/ | 1/ˈevri| || Every day something new happens.

everyone /ˈevriwʌn/ | 1/ˈevriwʌn| || Everyone in the village celebrates Tibetan New Year.

everything /ˈevriθɪŋ/ | 1/ˈevriθɪŋ| || Everything got wet in the rain.

everywhere /ˈevriwɛə/ | 1/ˈevriwɛə| || The sheep were scattered everywhere on the grassland.

evidence /ˈevɪdəns/ | 1/ˈevɪdəns| || There was little evidence that he stole the money.

evil /ˈɪvl/ | 1/ˈɪvl| || There is a big difference between good and evil.

exact /ɪgˈzækt/ | 1/ɪgˈzækt| || What is your exact age?

examine /ɪgˈzæmɪn/ | 1/ɪgˈzæmɪn| || The doctor wants to examine the patient.
example /ɪg'zæmpl/ | ɛxəmpl || Can you give me an example of how to use that word?

excellent /'ɛksələnt/ | ɛksələnt || She got an excellent job at the university.

except /ɪk'sept/ | ɛk'sept || Except for the youngest son, the whole family went to town.

exchange /ɪks'tʃeindʒ/ | ɪks'tʃeindʒ || 'The exchange of gifts between old friends took only a few minutes. Can you exchange this pot for a different one?'

excite /ɪk'saɪt/ | ɪk'saɪt || The film was very exciting.

excuse /ɪk'skjʊs/ | ɪk'skjʊs || 'She didn't have any excuse for not doing her homework. If you are late again the teacher won’t excuse you.'

execute /ɪk'sɛktʃuːt/ | ɪk'sɛktʃuːt || They now have enough money to execute their plan.

exercise /ɪksər'zaiʃ(ə)n/ | ɪksər'zaiʃ(ə)n || 'Playing basketball is good exercise. After I exercise I feel tired.'

exist /ɪɡ'zɪst/ | ɪɡ'zɪst || The school didn't exist before 1978.

expand /ɪk'spænd/ | ɪk'spænd || We want to expand the farming area.

expect /ɪk'spekt/ | ɪk'spekt || He expects to attend the university in the fall.

expel /ɪk'spel/ | ɪk'spel || Several students were expelled from school last year.

experiment /ɪk'spɜːrɪmənt/ | ɪk'spɜːrɪmənt || In science class we do experiments.

expert /'ɛkspɜːt/ | ɛkspɜːt || They had to call an expert to help with the problem.

explain /ɪk'splein/ | ɪk'splein || Can you explain your answer to the question?

explode /ɪk'splaʊd/ | ɪk'splaʊd || The bomb made a loud noise when it exploded.
They explored the area and found gold.

Wool is an important export product.

Next year our country will export more than it imports.

We decided to take the express bus rather than the slow one.

My express purpose for visiting you is to see if how you are.

The visitors chose to extend their time in the countryside.

I will buy some extra clothes for the journey.

It is extremely hot during the summer.

The doctor examined both her right eye and her left eye.

The teacher suggested she do some eye exercises to help improve her eyesight.

The young girl has a beautiful face.

I lost face when I was publicly reprimanded.

The teacher punished the disobedient student by making her face the blackboard for ten minutes.

It is important to separate fact from fiction.

Many people work at the factory.

If she doesn't study hard she will fail in school.

We don't think that rule is very fair.

She easily gets sunburn because she has a fair complexion.

232
The leaves on the trees turn colour every fall. 

Snow falls every winter. 

One needs to be a good rider to not fall off a horse. 

Our factory’s production will fall off if we don’t buy some new machines. 

We will fall out of favor with our teacher if we don’t do better on the next examination. 

Michael Jackson is a famous singer. 

He wants to farm those two fields but I think they are too rocky. 

The farmer works very long hours every day. 

The market is farther from town than I thought. 

The other side of the county is the farthest he has ever travelled. 

The young children run fast to catch the bus to town. 

That yak is fat, not thin. 

The son was looking for his father at the market. 

Red is my favourite colour.
fear /fʊər/ | 1ˈfeərɪŋ 2ˈfəːrən || 1My biggest fear during class is that the teacher will ask me a question and I won’t be able to answer correctly.

feast /feɪst/ | ˈfeɪst || At New Year's we always have a feast.

feather /ˈfeðər/ | ˈfeðər || The feather floated in the air.

February /ˈfebruəri/ | ˈfɜːbrəri || March follows February.

feed /fiːd/ | ˈfɪd || 1Is there enough feed for the cattle this winter? 2What will you feed the children?

feel /fiːl/ | ˈfiːl || How do you feel today?

feel worried | ˈfɛl ˈwɜːrd || I feel worried before examinations.

female /ˈfeməl/ | ˈfɛməl || "Female" is the opposite of "male."

fertile /ˈfɜːtɪl/ | ˈfɜːtɪl || Fertile land is good for growing crops.

few /fjuː/ | ˈfjuː || There are few lakes in this area.

field /fiːld/ | ˈfiːld || The horses grazed out in the field.

fierce /fɪəs/ | ˈfɪəs || The fierce dogs scared the robbers away.

fifteen /ˈfɪfɪn/ | ˈfɪfɪn || Fifteen days ago I went home.

fifth /fɪfθ/ | ˈfɪfθ || This is the fifth day of the New Year.

fifty /ˈfɪfti/ | ˈfɪfti || He was sick for fifty days.

fight /fæt/ | ˈfæt || 1The drunk men got into a fight. 2I don’t want to fight you because you are my friend.

fill /fɪl/ | ˈfɪl || We should fill that hole in the road.

film /fɪlm/ | ˈfɪlm || 1Do you have any film for your camera? 2I want to film the traditional dance in my village this summer.
final /'fæml/ || At the end of the year the teacher gives a final exam.

first /fɜːst/ || He wanted to be first in line at the store.

find /fænd/ || I can't find one of my shoes. Our teacher will find us if we don't come to class on time.

find out || How can we find out who was here yesterday?

fine /fain/ || I'm feeling fine today. I didn't have enough money to pay the fine. Our teacher will fine us if we don't come to class on time.

finish /'fɪmɪʃ/ || Did you ever finish reading that book?

fire /'faɪər/ || Quick, bring some water to put out the fire.

firm /fɜːm/ || The business firm lost money last year. The firm potatoes are the freshest ones.

first /fɜːst/ || He wanted to be first in line at the store.

fish /fɪʃ/ || There are big fish in the lake. I don't like to fish but my father does.

five /fʌɪv/ || There are five fingers on each hand.

fix /fɪks/ || Do you know how to fix the radio?

flag /flæg/ || The flag was flapping in the wind. If our car has a mechanical problem while we are travelling we can flag down another car and ask for help.

flee /flɪː/ || The people had to flee from the overflowing river.

float /fləut/ || Wood floats on water.

flood /flɒd/ || The flood destroyed the crops last season. If the dam breaks the reservoir’s water will flood the countryside.
Don't put the clothes on the floor.

The river's flow is less than last year because of this year's severe drought. The river flows swiftly in the springtime.

This plant will soon flower.

The truck had to go very slow because of the fog.

The calf followed its mother everywhere.

We go to the market to buy food.

The clown acted like a fool.

The shoes were at the foot of the bed.

We like to play football with our friends.

We played outside for a few hours.

The policemen were criticized for using unnecessary force to subdue the criminal.

Travelling to foreign places is interesting.

Don't forget to do your homework.

She could forgive him if he said he was sorry.
form /fɔːm/ | ¹frдежна ²рёфен | ¹He wants to form a new academic organisation. ²To get the job the form must be filled out.

former /ˈfɔːmər/ | ¹фрёфмə | ¹The former chief lived in that house. ²I agree with your former point but not your latter point.

forward /ˈfɔːwəd/ | ¹фрёфмəдə | The car moved forward slowly.

four /fɔːr/ | ¹фрёр | There are four people in the bus.

fourth /fɔːθ/ | ¹фрёрθ | On her fourth birthday she was very happy.

free /frI/ | ¹фре́ | People do not like to be controlled by others, they like to be free. ²The newspaper is free.

freeze /frIz/ | ¹фре́з | If the apples are left outside they will freeze.

French /ˈfrentʃ/ | ¹френч | Do you know how to speak French?

fresh /freʃ/ | ¹фреш | The milk is fresh from the cow.

Friday /ˈfraɪdeɪ/ | ¹фрайдэі | Friday is the last school day in the week.

fridge (refrigerator, ice-box) /frɪdʒ/ | ¹фридж | They were happy with their new fridge.

fried /frɪd/ | ¹фрид | Fried mutton makes a good meal.

friend /frend/ | ¹френд | I want to bring my friend to the party.

friendly /ˈfrendli/ | ¹френдлі | Those people are so friendly.

frighten /ˈfraɪtn/ | ¹фрайтн | Don't let the fierce dog frighten you.

frisbee (frisby) /ˈfrɪzbi/ | ¹фросбі | Toss me the frisbee!

from /frəm; frəm/ | ¹фром | I went from Lhasa to Lanzhou last year by bus.
front /frɒnt/ || There were many trees in front of the house. 

fruit /fruːt/ || We went to pick fruit from the trees last week. 

fry /frai/ || She doesn't like to fry food. 

fuel /ˈfjuːəl/ || Be sure to buy some fuel for the car. 

full /fʊl/ || This bus is too full. 

fun /fʌn/ || After school we like to have fun. 

funeral /ˈfjuːnərəl/ || They were all very quiet on the way to the funeral. 

furious /ˈfjʊəriəs/ || His father was furious when he learned his son missed school. 

future /ˈfjuːtər/ || In the future we will have two schools in this village. 

G 

gain /gɛm/ || The doctor told her to gain weight. 

game /gɛm/ || They played a new game in the schoolyard. 

garden /ˈgɑːdn/ || Shall we plant some flowers in the garden? 

gas /ɡæs/ || The car stopped running when it ran out of gas. 

gate /ɡeɪt/ || Be sure to close the gate behind you. 

gather /ɡæðə/ || They left early to go gather the sheep. 

general /ˈdʒenrəl/ || The general idea about going to school is to get an education. 

get /ɡet/ || Can you get me some things from the store? 

get down /ɡet daʊn/ || She told the child to get down from the roof.
get dressed / get dresd/ || We have to get dressed and go to school.

get home / get hau/ || I hope I will get home before it gets dark.

get on / get on/ || They are hoping to get on the bus to Ziling.

get ready for / get 'redi fa/ || He had to get ready for the evening party.

get ready to / get 'redi tu:/ || Let’s get ready to go to lunch.

get to / get tu:/ || Do you think we will get to go to town today?

get up / get Ap/ || We get up early everyday to go to school.

get warm / get wɔ:m/ || Let’s go inside the house and get warm.

gift / gift/ || She wanted to bring her friend a nice gift.

girl / g3:l/ || There is only one girl in our class.

give / gIiv/ || Maybe someone will give us some money.

give . . . the message / 'mesIdZ/ || Be sure to give her the message.

glass / gla:s/ || He broke the glass window pane by accident.

I would like to have a glass of hot water.

go / gao/ || Don't go there.

go for a walk / wake/ || We like to go for a walk after lunch.

go for supper / 'spa/ || Do you want to go for supper at that restaurant?
go home | होम गियो || He didn't want to go home right away. नहीं था कि उसे घर में जाना चाहिए।
go on | जाओ || She was so tired that she didn't think she could go on working.
go shopping /ˈʃɒpɪŋ/ | खरीद पड़ो || I want to go shopping with my mother.
go skating /ˈskætn/ | खिचड़ी पड़ो || We could go skating if the lake is frozen.
go to bed /ˈbed/ | क्षुद्री पड़ो || I told my sister to go to bed at eight o'clock.
go to class /klɑːs/ | लेख्षम पड़ो || We have to go to class now.
go to the classroom /klɑːsˈruːm/ | लेख्षम रूम पड़ो || After lunch we go to the classroom.
goal /ɡəʊl/ | गोल पड़ो || If we work hard we will achieve our goals.
god /ɡʊd/ | गॉड || He did not know the name of the god in his village’s temple.
gold /ɡʊld/ | गोल || There is a lot of gold in Qinghai.
good /ɡʊd/ | गॉड || She did a good job on her school paper.
Good idea! /ˈɑːdə/ | गॉड आरा || Good idea! Let's go to the party now.
goodbye /ˌɡʊdˈbaɪ/ | गॉड बे || "Goodbye. See you tomorrow." "देखने लायक है।"
goodness /ˈɡʊdnəs/ | गॉडनेस || 1She is so kind and full of goodness.
2My goodness! That is a very big problem. 
goods /ɡʊdz/ | गॉड्स || We had better return these goods to the shelves.
govern /ˈɡɑːvən/ | गवरन || It takes many people to govern a nation.
government /ˈɡɑːvəmənt/ | गवरमेंट || The Chinese government is a large organisation.
What grade did you get on the test?

My daughter is in Grade Two in primary school.

There are many piles of grain in the yard.

I got a grant that will allow me to do research on Tibetan folk songs for one year.

Perhaps he could grant three wishes.

The store opening was a grand event.

My mother loves her granddaughter very much.

My grandfather lives in our house.

My grandma is eighty years old.

Will your grandparents come to visit us?

He was an obedient grandson.

I added some ground spices to the soup.

The group of students went out to play.
grow /g्रoʊ/ | گیارا | We grow many different kinds of vegetables.

guard /gɑːrd/ | گارد | This letter guarantees that the equipment will be replaced if it breaks. 

guarantee /ɡɑrənti/ | گارانتی | The guard stood all night outside the building.

guerrilla /gəˈrɪlə/ | گواریلیا | She showed me a picture of a big black guerrilla in the jungle.

guilty /ˈɡɪlti/ | گیلتی | The court found that he was guilty of a crime.

guilty /ˈɡɪlti/ | گیلتی | The court found that he was guilty of a crime.

half /hɑːf/ | یاری | Please cut the bread in half.

half an hour | یاری یاری | After half an hour I will go home.

halt /hɑːlt/ | ہالت | "Halt," said the policeman to the thief running away.

hand /hænd/ | ہند | If you can’t do it by yourself, please tell me and I’ll give you a hand.

hair /hɛər/ | ہیر | She has such long and thick hair.

half /hɑːf/ | یاری | Please cut the bread in half.

half an hour | یاری یاری | After half an hour I will go home.

halt /hɑːlt/ | ہالت | "Halt," said the policeman to the thief running away.

hand /hænd/ | ہند | If you can’t do it by yourself, please tell me and I’ll give you a hand.

hair /hɛər/ | ہیر | She has such long and thick hair.
handbag /ˈhændbæɡ/ | She put her money in her handbag.  

hang /ˈhæŋ/ | We hang out the laundry when the sun is shining.  

happen /ˈhæpən/ | We all stood around waiting for something to happen.  

happily /ˈhæpɪli/ | The two sisters talked together happily.  

happy /ˈhæpi/ | I was happy to see my father coming down the street.  

happy birthday /ˈhæpi ˈbɜːθdeɪ/ | We all sang "Happy Birthday" at her birthday party.  

Happy New Year! | Everyone yelled, "Happy New Year!" when the clock struck midnight.  

harbour (harbor) /ˈhɑːbər/ | There were many boats in the harbour.  

hard /hɑːrd/ | 1She worked very hard at her studies.  

hard-working | They were all hard-working students.  

harm /hɑːm/ | I’ll take care of you and make sure that you don’t come to harm.  

harvest /ˈhɑːvɪst/ | The wheat harvest was bigger this year than last year.  

has /hæz; / | He has two children.  

hat /hæt/ | Don’t forget to wear your hat.  

hate /hæt/ | "Hate" is the opposite of "love."  

have /hæv/ | Do you have any money?  

have a cup of tea | Let’s go and have a cup of tea.  

243
have a good time /ˈɡʊd ˈteɪm/ | гиўдд таим | I think we will have a good time on our journey.

have a look | /hævəˈlʊk/ | ˈhævəlʊk | We went to have a look at the mountains.

have a rest | /hævəˈrest/ | ˈhævərest | They stopped for a while to have a rest.

have a swim | /hævəˈswɪm/ | ˈhævəswɪm | It was so hot that they decided to have a swim.

have breakfast | /hævəˈbrekfəst/ | ˈhævəbrekfəst | It’s important to have a good breakfast.

have lunch | /hævəˈlʌntʃ/ | ˈhævəlʌntʃ | Where shall we have lunch?

have to | /hæv tə/ | ˈhævtə | Do we have to go home now?

headquarters | /ˌhɛdˌkɔːrɪətəs| ˌhɛdˈkɔːrɪətəs | That brick building is the police headquarters.

health /ˈhelθ/ | ˈhelθ | Eating good food will improve your health.

healthy /ˈhelθi/ | ˈhelθi | Getting enough exercise makes a healthy body.

hear /hɪər/ | ˈhɪər | Speak louder, I can’t hear you.

heard /hɜːd/ | ˈhɜːd | I never heard what happened to them.

heart /hɑːt/ | ˈhɑːt | He has some problem with his heart.

heat /hɪt/ | ˈhɪt | The heat in the summer feels good.

heavy /ˈhevi/ | ˈhevi | The load was too heavy for the donkey.

hell /ˈhel/ | ˈhel | Some people believe hell is on earth.

helicopter /ˈhelɪkɒptər/ | ˈhelɪkɒptər | You don’t see many helicopters in Ziling.

hello /ˈheləʊ/ | ˈheləʊ | Hello! How are you?

help /help/ | ˈhelp | 1 I appreciate your help. 2 We always like to help our teacher after school.
Many boys want to become heroes.

Hi! Nice to see you.

She didn't want to give her sister the book.

You are welcome here.

You are welcome here.

She didn't know if the book was hers or her brother's.

She wanted to bake the bread all by herself.

Hey! What are you doing over there?

The child liked to hide behind the trees.

That mountain is very high.

Highland barley is a common crop in this area.

The airplane hijack attempt occurred when the plane was over the Atlantic Ocean.

The thieves hijacked the bus.

That is only a small hill over there.

Did you give the letter to him?

He went to the festival by himself.

His hat was made out of fox skin.

She didn't know the history of her village.

I told him not to hit his brother.

Hmmm, I wonder how much this costs?

Would you like to hold the baby for a while?

The fox jumped into the hole.

During the winter we have a holiday from school.

We often go to visit the holy mountain.

Do you think your brother is at home?

She always likes to go visit her hometown.
The good students do their homework.

She was an honest girl.

They wanted to honour their grandparents’ wishes.

His biggest hope is that he will be able to graduate from college and then get a good job.

We hope they don't get caught in the rain.

There was a horrible accident on the road.

I like to ride my horse.

We had to take him to the hospital when he was sick.

The people were hostile to the strangers.

Before a war there are usually some smaller hostilities among people.

The soup is too hot to eat.

They just finished building a new hotel in town.

I will be back in one hour.

Would you like to come to our house for dinner?

My sister doesn't do much housework.

How long will it take to get there? I don’t know how you did it but I'm glad you did.

How are you? I'm fine and you?

How many brothers do you have?

How much money do you have?
**how often** | How often do you go to the market?

**How old are you?** | How old are you? I'm ten years old.

**however** | I don't know if it's possible, however, you can try.

**huge** | I saw a huge animal on the mountain.

**human** | The people said the strange creature didn't look human.

**humour (humor)** | He has an excellent sense of humour.

**hundred** | We learned how to count to a hundred in English class.

**hunger** | No one should die from hunger.

**hungry** | The child was crying because she was hungry.

**hunt** | During the hunt one hunter accidentally shot another hunter. The older boys left to hunt wild animals.

**hurry** | I'm not in a hurry so take your time. We had to hurry or be late for school.

**hurt** | It has taken me a long time to get over the hurt you caused me. Be careful. Don't hurt yourself using that hammer.

**husband** | She was happy to find a nice husband.

**I** | I don't know when I will be home again.

**ice** | Do you think the water has turned to ice yet?

**idea** | It would be a good idea if you wore warm clothes.

**if** | If she knew him she would tell me.
He didn't want to do anything illegal.

They bought the machines to improve farming methods.

Do you know how to write a letter in English?

The teacher is usually in the classroom.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.

The bus is coming.
incident /ˈɪnsɪdənt/ | इन्सिडेंट || The newspaper reported the incident in great detail.

incite /ɪkˈsaɪt/ | इन्साइट || It was said that those boys incited a riot.

include /ɪnˈkluːd/ | इन्क्लूड || She wanted to be included in planning the party.

increase /ɪnˈkriːs/ | इन्क्रीज || 1. I’m worried about my recent weight increase. 2. They might have to increase the price of meat soon.
inspect /ɪnˈspɛkt/ | इन्स्पेक्ट || The police came to inspect the building.

instead /ɪnˈsted/ | इन्स्टेड || Instead of meat he wanted to eat vegetables. इन्स्टेड खाने के लिए उन्होंने मसाले ही खाने चाहीए।

instrument /ɪnˈstrəmənt/ | इन्स्ट्र्युमेंट || Do you know how to play a musical instrument?

intelligent /ɪnˈtelɪdʒənt/ | इन्टेलिजेंट || The scholar is very intelligent.

inspect /ɪnˈspekt/ | इन्स्पेक्ट || The police came to inspect the building.

instead /ɪnˈsted/ | इन्स्टेड || Instead of meat he wanted to eat vegetables. इन्स्टेड खाने के लिए उन्होंने मसाले ही खाने चाहीए।

instrument /ɪnˈstrəmənt/ | इन्स्ट्र्युमेंट || Do you know how to play a musical instrument?

intelligent /ɪnˈtelɪdʒənt/ | इन्टेलिजेंट || The scholar is very intelligent.

interest /ɪnˈtɜːrst/ | इन्टरेस्ट || 1What percent interest does the bank pay on one-year deposits? बैंक देने वाले वर्ष के लिए कितना प्रतिशत ब्याज देता है?

2Do you have any interest in studying English? आप इंग्लिश विद्या की कोई रुचि रखते हैं?

interesting /ɪnˈtɜːrstɪŋ/ | इन्टरेस्टिंग || I find travelling to other places is interesting.

interfere /ɪnˈtɛrfaɪə/ | इन्टरफेर | His mother wanted to interfere in their neighbour’s business. उनकी माँ उन्होंने उनके नैतिक व्यवसाय में निकाला।

international /ɪnˈtɜːnəʃənl/ | इन्टरनेशनल || They waited at the airport for the international flight to arrive. उन्होंने आपर्ट हवाई अड्डे पर अंतरराष्ट्रीय विमान को पहुंचने तक अवरोध किया।

intervene /ɪnˈtərvɪn/ | इन्टरव्यून | The teacher had to intervene in the fight between two boys. शिक्षक दो छात्रों के बीच का झगड़ा में में प्रेरित हो गया।

into /ɪnˈtəʊ; before vowels ɪnˈtəʊ; ˈɪntuː/ | इंटू || It was difficult getting into the sleeping bag. नींद की बैग में प्रवेश करना मुश्किल था।

invade /ɪnˈvɑːd/ | इन्वेड || The enemy was going to invade in the morning. अद्भुत खाने का अंतरराष्ट्रीय इनवेड है।

invest /ɪnˈvest/ | इन्वेस्ट || China invented paper.

invest /ɪnˈvest/ | इन्वेस्ट || If you put your money in the bank they will invest it for you. आप निर्माण निवेश के लिए बैंक में अपने पैसे रख देंगे।

investigate /ɪnˈvestɪgət/ | इन्स्ट्रेट || The police needed to investigate the crime. भारतीय पुलिस क्राइम की जांच करनी चाहिए।

invite /ɪnˈvایt/ | इन्वाइट || I will invite her to my home for dinner. मैं उसकी घर में दिनरात्रि में आने का आदेश देंगा।
involve /ɪnˈvɔɪl/ | ইনভাল্ট | It's better not to involve too many people in the problem.
iron /ˈaɪrən/ | ইরন | The hammer is made out of iron.
is bad for | ব্যাডফর | Smoking is bad for you.
is different from | ডিফারেন্টফর | Frying food is different from baking.
is good at | গুডেট | He is good at English.
is good for | গুডফর | Exercise is good for you.
is out | 'aʊt / ˈaʊtjuː/ | 1 School is out for the summer after one month.
inside | 'aɪnsaid | Shall we go inside the house?
island /ˈaɪlənd/ | ইলান্ড | Have you ever been on a desert island?
issue /ˈɪʃuː; ˈɪsjuː/ | ইস্জুএ। | The newspaper reports on many issues.
It doesn’t matter. | ইটডন্টমেটার | It doesn’t matter how long you stay.
it’s | 'aɪts | It’s your turn to do the dishes.
jail /dʒeɪl/ | জেইল | 1 The police will jail you if you commit a crime.
japanese | 'dʒəpənɪsk | Are you learning how to speak Japanese?
jewel /dʒuːəl/ | জুএল | She kept a precious jewel in a box.
job /dʒoʊb/ | জোব | He hopes to get a good job after school.
join /dʒɔɪn/ | জোইন | She will join the army someday.
joint /dʒɔɪnt/ 1�ूक भेल्ल 2कुंडलिनी || 1The joint in the water pipe is broken.

joke /dʒəʊk/ || २पुरूष || He always likes to tell a good joke.

judge /dʒʌdʒ/ 1सादृश्य 2विषय विषय || 1The teacher is a very good judge of character. 

July /dʒuːl/ || २नयन || July is a month during the summer.

jump /dʒʌmp/ || 1The children like to jump into the river.

June /dʒuːn/ || २नयन || June is a lovely month for looking at flowers.

jungle /dʒʌŋgəl/ || २नयन || There is no jungle in Qinghai.

jury /dʒʊəri/ || २नयन || The jury decided that the man was guilty.

just /dʒʌst/ || २नयन || The bus arrived just in time.

keep /kiːp/ 1२अभ्यास || 1Keep quiet! Mother is sleeping.

keep busy || २नयन || My father always likes to keep busy.

keep healthy || २नयन || You must eat good food if you want to keep healthy.

kick /kɪk/ || २नयन || The horse kicked me in the leg.

kidnap /'kɪdneɪp/ || २नयन || It is illegal to kidnap anyone.

kill /kɪl/ || २नयन || They kill chickens and sheep for the market.

kilo (kilogram) /'kɪləʊ/ /'krɪəgrəm/ || २नयन || I’ll buy a kilo of oranges.

kilometre (kilometer) /'kɪləmiːtə; krɪˈlɒmɪtə/ || २नयन || We walked one kilometre to his home.
kind /kamd/ | ¹my teacher is kind. ²what kind of husband do you want? ³kind of khasar, gajari, kienda
kinds of crops | ¹i grow all kinds of crops. ²kind of crop
kiss /kis/ | ¹mother is kissing her baby. ²kiss a duck
kite /katt/ | ¹the kite flew into the sky. ²kind of kite
knife /næt/ | ¹my knife is long. ²kind of knife
know /nəʊ/ | ¹i don’t know English very well. ²didn’t know, didn’t know

L

labour (labor) /ləˈbɔːr/ | ¹i labor every day under harsh working conditions. ²building a road requires hard labour.
laboratory /ləˈbɔːtri/ | ¹scientists do their work in a laboratory.
lack /læk/ | ¹for lack of money she had to wear old shoes.
ladder /ˈlædə/ | ¹i will climb a ladder to reach the roof top.
lake /læk/ | ¹qinghai lake is very large.
lama /ləˈma/ | ¹the lama prays in the temple.
lamb /læm/ | ¹the baby lamb was brought into the tent.
land /lænd/ | ¹how much land does your family have?
language /ˈlaŋgwɪdʒ/ | ¹we are learning to speak the english language in school.
large /lɑːdʒ/ | ¹she is a large woman.
last /lɑːst/ | ¹i’m always last in line.
last month | ¹last month was my birthday.
last time | ¹the last time i saw you, you were ill.
last week | ¹i saw that movie last week.
last year | ¹last year i studied french.
late /lɛt/ || Don’t be late for class!

later on /ˈlɑːtɚ/ || Later on let’s go to your home.

laugh at /lɑːf/ || When you fell we laughed at you.

laugh /lɑːf/ || 1When I hear his laugh I also laugh.

launch /lɑːntʃ/ || When they are finished building the ship they must launch it.

lead /liːd/ || 1I will follow your lead. 2You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it drink.

leak /liːk/ || The windows in our classroom leak when it rains.

learn /lɜːn/ || Will you learn Tibetan next year?

learned /ˈlɜːnd/ || 1He is a very learned monk. 2He learned almost nothing.

learning /ˈlɜːnɪŋ/ || He is learning English.

leave /liːv/ || Please leave your coats here.

left /liːft/ || 1He left my home an hour ago. 2I write with my left hand.

leg /leɡ/ || My right leg is painful.

legal /ˈlɛɡəl/ || The lawyer asked the judge a legal question.

lend /lend/ || Can you lend me some money?

less /les/ || I have less money than you do.

less than a day /ˈleɪs tæn dæɪ/ || He worked less than a day.

less than a month /ˈleɪs thən ə mʌnθ/ || In less than a month I will be thirteen.
less than a week | I will leave school in less than a week.
less than a year | I have studied English for less than a year.
lesson /lesn/ | What lesson will we learn today?
let /let/ | I let my students go home early.
letter /leta/ | Please write a letter to your friend.
level /levl/ | The topography here is level in some areas and sloping in other areas.
literal /lIb@r@l/ | She had some liberal ideas about education.
lift /lIft/ | Help me lift this box.
light /lIt/ | The light in this room is not good.
literacy /lækəns/ | My mother has a driver's license.
lie /lat/ | Don’t lie! Tell the truth!
life /laIf/ | Most people want to have a good life.
liberal /lIb@r@l/ | She had some liberal ideas about education.
license /laIsns/ | My mother has a driver's license.
like /læk/ | I like to study English.
limit /lImIt/ | There is no limit to the number of cups of tea I can drink.
line /læm/ | Draw a line on your paper.
link /lIk/ | He is the link between the two sides.
liquid /liIkWId/ | The kettle was overflowing with liquid.
list /lis/ || Please list your expenses for last year.

listen and repeat || As I read the new words please listen and repeat.

listen /lɪsn/ || Don’t listen to what she says.

listen to || Please carefully listen to your teacher.

little /ˈlɪtl/ || My little brother is now a student.

live /lɪv/ || They will do a live performance of music.

load /lɑːd/ || The yak is carrying a very heavy load.

local /ˈləʊkl/ || Those thangkas were drawn by local artists.

lonely /ˈləʊnli/ || It was lonely walking on the road at night.

long /lɒŋ/ || He has very long legs.

look /lʊk/ || This product has a new modern look.

look after || When I’m gone, please look after my children.

look around || Please look around your bedroom for the book.

look at || Please look at your book.

look by || Please look by the window for your missing watch.

look for || Look for the missing bag in the kitchen.

look like || You look like your mother.

look over || After you look over my shop’s merchandise, I hope you buy something.

look the same || You look the same as you did ten years ago.
The man thought he would lose the bet.

This lot of students is the best I’ve ever taught.

The majority of students wanted to have a party at the school.

The man thought he would lose the bet.

This lot of students is the best I’ve ever taught.

1. The love I have for my wife is greater than the love I have for myself.
2. I love my mother very much.

The truck engine makes a loud sound.

I've never seen a machine like this before.

She's not sane, she's mad.

I got so mad at him because he insulted me.

Madam Wang just had her eightieth birthday.

Did you get any letters in the mail today?

I will mail your package when I go to the post office tomorrow.

She bought some stamps at the main post office.

Is English your major area of study?

I major in Tibetan language and literature.

The majority of students wanted to have a party at the school.

Do you know how to make bread?
make faces | རྟོགས་སྔགས། | Don’t make faces at your classmates. གལ་ཏེ། རྟོགས་སྔགས་སོ། །
make | རྟོགས། | How do you make milk tea? གལ་ཏེ། རྟོགས་སྔགས་སོ། །
male /meI/ | མ་ | Men are male. གལ་ཏེ། མ་ཞེ་ཞེབས།
man /mæn/ | ཕྱིན། | I am a man. གལ་ཏེ། བྱིན་ཞེ་ཞེབས།
many /mɛnI/ | 1 སྒྲོལ་ 2 རང་ | 1 How many oranges do you want? གལ་ཏེ། སྒྲོལ་ རང་ རང་
map /mæp/ | 1 སྒང་ 2 བར་མཚན། | 1 The map of China looks like a cock. གལ་ཏེ། སྒང་ བར་མཚན། བར་
march /ma:tʃ/ | 1 རྒྱུན་ 2 བར་མཆེད། | The soldiers learn how to march in a line. གལ་ཏེ། རྒྱུན་ བར་མཆེད།
March /ma:tʃ/ | རྒྱུན། | March is a windy month. གལ་ཏེ། རྒྱུན།
mark /ma:k/ | 1 བར་མཚན། 2 བར་མ་ | 1 What is that mark on your arm? གལ་ཏེ། བར་མཚན། བར་མ་
market /ma:kIt/ | 1 བར་མཆི། 2 བར་མཚན། | 1 What kind of things do they sell in the market? གལ་ཏེ། བར་མཆི། བར་
marry /'mærl/ | རྒྱུན། | That woman is going to marry my brother. གལ་ཏེ། རྒྱུན།
mass /mæs/ | བར་མཚན། | A great mass of flies gathered on the dead sheep. གལ་ཏེ། བར་མཚན།
material /mættəriəl/ | སྒང་ | Wool is strong material for a coat. གལ་ཏེ། སྒང་
matter /'mætə/ | 1 བར་མཆི། | 1 What’s the matter with you? གལ་ཏེ། བར་མཆི། བར་
may /meI/ | རྒྱུན། | May I help you? གལ་ཏེ། རྒྱུན་།
May /meI/ | རྒྱུན། | May is in spring. གལ་ཏེ། རྒྱུན་།
maybe /'meIbi/ | རྒྱུན་ | Maybe I will be a nurse. གལ་ཏེ། རྒྱུན་།
mayor /'meIə/ | ( རྒྱུན་) དཔའ་ | Who do you think will be appointed mayor of this
town? གལ་ཏེ། རྒྱུན་ དཔའ་ དཔའ་
me /mi:/ | རྒྱུན། | Don’t laugh at me! གལ་ཏེ། རྒྱུན།

258
meal /mi:l/  |  emplate Which can we have a meal together? When can we have a meal together?
mean /mi:n/  |  2 template What does "apple" mean in Chinese?
  Don’t be mean to your sister. Don’t be mean to your sister.
measure /meər/  |  2 template Do you have a way to measure the size of this room?
  1 I am very glad to be meeting all my old friends again.
melt /mɛlt/  |  2 template The weather is so warm, perhaps the ice on the lake will melt.
mend /mɛnd/  |  2 template Please mend my socks.
mercy /mɛsi/  |  2 template The fox had no mercy for the chicken. His motives for working were purely mercenary.
message /mesdiʒ/  |  2 template Did you want to leave a message? Do you want to leave a message?
metal /ˈmeɪtl/  |  2 template The bridge is made out of strong metal.

259
A microscope helps the eye see very small objects like bacteria.

The nearest middle school is in the county town.

The boy sitting in the middle of the picture is my brother.

The general's speech was full of militant ideas.

The military life is full of hardship.

Yak milk is rich. After my mother milks the yaks she collects dung.

Our teacher has a very open mind.

Do you mind if I smoke?

This book is mine. There is no gold mine in this country.

There are many types of minerals in Qinghai.

The Minister of the Education Department is a very busy person.

I'm not concerned with minor problems.

Until you are an adult you are a minor.

Tibetans are one of China's minority populations.

I will come to your room in a minute.

I'm going to miss school when it is over.

Miss Li teaches us French.

They launched a missile that will go to the moon.
missing /ˈmɪsɪŋ/ | ཐེང་བ་ལ་བཞིག་སྤྲད། || Her brother was missing from school yesterday.

mistake /ˈmɪstreɪk/ | རྡོག་ལུགས། || I made a mistake.

mix /mɪks/ | མིང་། || Milk mixed with tea is a common Tibetan drink.

mob /mɔb/ | མིང་། || A loud and angry mob of people raided the store.

moderate /ˈmodərət/ | གངས་ལུགས་༠/ 1This area has a moderate climate during the summer. 2I’ve been asked to moderate the discussion.

modern /ˈmɒdən/ | འོང་། || I like to read books about modern times.

mom (mummy) /mʌm/ /ˈməmi/ | རོང། || My mom worked late last night.

moment /ˈmɔːmənt/ | མོའ། བུ་ཅེས། || I’ll leave in a moment.

Monday /ˈmændri; -di/ | འབྲུ། || I start work on Monday.

money /ˈmʌni/ | གཞན། || I don’t have much money.

monkey /ˈmʌŋki/ | གཤེག་། || I saw a monkey in the zoo.

month /mʌnθ/ | འབྲུ། || Which month do you like best?

moon /ˈmʌn/ | གཞན། || The moon is beautiful tonight.

more /mɔər/ | གཞན་ཐ་མཁུན། || I don’t need more money.

morning /ˈmɔːnɪŋ/ | བུ་ཧི། || I do some exercises in the morning.

most /mɔʊst/ | གཞན། || Most of my classmates are Tibetan.

mother /ˈmʌðər/ | རོང། || My mother died last year.

motion /ˈməʊʃn/ | རོང་བུ་སྤྲིབ། || She danced with such smooth motions.

mountain /ˈmaʊntən/ | འོང་། || We didn't have time to climb to the top of the mountain.
We all mourned the passing of our grandmother. Now that the period of mourning has passed for our deceased father, we can attend parties.

The move to my new apartment required one week. Please move over so I can sit down.

I didn’t like the movie.

Mr. Jones came to your classroom yesterday.

Mrs. Sgrol ma teaches us Tibetan.

Ms. Smith is our English teacher.

I don’t have much knowledge of the history of Portugal.

How much does this cost?

He made me so angry that I wanted to murder him.

I love to listen to music on the radio.

You mustn’t leave your home alone.

You mustn't tell him about the problem at school.

Mutton is now very cheap.

This is my book.

I hurt myself with the knife.

It is a mystery how the books were stolen.

The baby slept naked in his mother’s arms.
What is your name? Can you name all of China’s provinces, autonomous regions, and special economic zones? China is a very large nation. China is a beautiful part of nature. The British used to have the largest navy in the world. The businessmen negotiated a good price for the land. She has neither money nor food. It took a lot of nerve for him to question the leader’s motives at the public meeting. He said he felt neutral about the situation. I never saw that movie. My coat is new. What will you do during the New Year holiday? Did you hear the news about China today? The next day he again did not go to school.
next time | নেক্স্ট টাইম || Next time we have lunch together I’ll pay.
next to | নেক্স্ট টো || Who sits next to you? নাইটেন্ট টো হান্ড আ লাক
next /nekst/ | নেক্স্ট || What will we do next? নেক্স্ট প্যাল আ লাক
next year | নেক্স্ট আর || Next year I will be fourteen.
nice /nais/ | নাইস || 1. Nice to meet you. নাইস টো মিট যু। 2. Nice meat soup is nice. নাইস মিট সুপ ই নাইস
night /nart/ | নাইট || When night came his tooth was more painful.
night-time | নাইট টাইম || I sleep during the night-time.
nine /nim/ | নাইন || My sister is nine.
ninth /nimθ/ | নাইথ থি || Her ninth birthday was last week.
nominate /'nɒmɪneɪt/ | নামিনেট || I’m going to nominate her for class monitor.
noodles /nuːdʒəl/ | নুড্জোল || I want noodles for lunch.
noon /nun/ | নুন || We usually eat lunch at noon.
normal /'nɔrml/ | নোর্মল || It is normal to want to eat food every day.
north /nɔːθ/ | নোথ || Grassland is in the north of the valley.
Northeast /nɔːθiːt/ | নোথিট || Liaoning is in Northeast China.
northerly /'nɔːθəli/ | নোথারলি || We walked in a northerly direction.
Northwest /'nɔːθwest/ | নোথ ওয়েস্ট || Gansu is in Northwest China.
nose /nəʊz/ | My nose is cold.
not at all | When she said, "Thank you," I said, "Not at all."
not /nɔt/ | Not everyone wanted to do it.
note /nəʊt/ | Please take a note to my friend.
nothing /ˈnʌθɪŋ/ | I understood nothing he said.
November /nəʊvəˈmɛmbər/ | It begins to get much colder in November.
now /nau/ | Now I am learning how to write Tibetan.
nowhere /ˈnɔweər/ | The poor man had nowhere to sleep that night.
nuclear /ˈnjuːklɪər/ | Nuclear weapons are extremely dangerous.
number /ˈnʌmbər/ | Three is a special number.
nurse /nɜːs/ | I want to become a nurse when I grow up.
O
o’clock /ˈɒklɒk/ | At four o’clock we go home.
obey /ˈbeɪ/ | The sons didn’t obey their father.
object /ˈɒbɪkʃt/ | A ball is a round object.
observe /əbˈzɑːv/ | She only likes to observe basketball games.
occupy /ˈɒkjʊpai/ | He knows how to occupy his time well.
ocean /ˈɒʃn/ | It takes many days to drive to the ocean from here.
October /ˈɒktoʊbər/ | How many days are in October?
of /ɒv, əv/ | She is the best of all the students.
off /ɒf/ | The light is off.
offer /ˈɒfər/ | I tried to offer him my coat because he was cold.
My office is here.

Is your father an officer in the army?

Did the official say that it was OK?

I often speak English.

Oh dear! I can't believe it is true!

Oh, is it really true?

We need more cooking oil.

OK, we will do what you suggest.

My grandmother is very old.

My father was on duty last night at the hospital.

I went on foot to the shop.

The book is on the desk.

After a policy of economic reforms was implemented the country became more open.

I must have an operation next week.

In his opinion everyone should get a good education.

I don't mean to oppose you but I really don't agree.

The opposite of "black" is "white."
oppress /əˈpres/ | Sometimes stronger animals like to oppress weaker ones.

or /ɔː/ | Do you want coffee or tea?

orange /ˈɔrɪndʒ/ | The orange was spoiled. Her orange jacket was easy to see from far away.

orbit /ˈɔːbrɪt/ | The earth’s orbit around the sun has been carefully studied. The planets orbit the sun.

orchestra /ɔrˈkɪstrə/ | Ten musicians were in the orchestra.

order /ˈɔːdər/ | Put your things in order. Please order your books and other belongings so that your room looks neat.

organise (organize) /ˈɔːɡənaɪz/ | I can’t organise my thoughts.

other /ˈʌðə/ | Do you want the other one?

our /əː/; ˈɔː/ | This is our home.

ours /ɔːz/; ˈɔːz/ | This basketball is ours.

ourselves /əːˈselvz/; ˈɔːsɛlz/ | We cleaned the room by ourselves.

out /aʊt/ | He threw the paper out the window.

out of | I walked out of the classroom.

outside /aʊtˈsaɪd/ | Outside it was colder than inside.

over /ˈʌvə/ | Class is not over yet. I don’t think I can jump over this river.

over there | I live over there.

owe /əʊ/ | How much money does he owe you for those potatoes?
This is my own home that my father left me when he died.

If you page through the book, you will see that it contains a number of spelling mistakes.

The doctor tried to stop the pain.

Every year we paint the outside of our house.

The red paint was cheaper than the blue paint.

I bought this pair of shoes last month.

The king and queen lived in a beautiful palace.

Have you seen a pamphlet describing the new school?

We need a big pan to cook all the meat.

That panda is black and white.

I don’t have any paper.

On May first we always have a parade.

We will parade down main street and then return to our school.

I beg your pardon, I didn't hear what you said.

The governor refused to pardon his crimes so he was executed.

After my father died I only had one parent.

My parents are both teachers.

My parents-in-law live in Rebgong.
park /pɑːk/ 1 [ˈpɑːk] 2 [ˈpɑ:k] 1 I went to People’s Park last Sunday.
2 Please park your car here.
parliament /ˈpærəˌmɛnt/ [ˈpærəˌmɛnt] Britain uses a parliamentary system of government.
part /pɑːt/ 1 [ˈpɑːt] 2 [pɑːt] Which part of this bread do you want?
partly /ˈpɑːtli/ [ˈpɑːtli] She recognised that the accident was partly her fault.
party /ˈpæti/ 1 [ˈpæti] 2 [ˈpæti] 1 We will have a party in our classroom this afternoon.
2 I don’t know very much about America’s political parties.
pass /pɑːs/ 1 [ˈpɑːs] 2 [pɑːs] 1 That mountain pass was an important military location many years ago.
2 Please pass the salt.
passage /ˈpæsɪdʒ/ [ˈpæsɪdʒ] It was a long passage by ship to America from England.
passenger /ˈpæsɪndʒə/ [ˈpæsɪndʒə] The passenger gave the ticket to the conductor.
passport /ˈpæspɔːt/ [ˈpæspɔːt] He thought he had lost his passport.
past /pɑːst/ [ˈpɑːst] In the past I did not study English.
path /pɑːθ/ [ˈpɑːθ] There is a lovely path going through the forest.
pay /peɪ/ [peɪ] I didn't have to pay much money for these shoes.
pea /piː/ [piː] A small green pea fell off her plate onto the floor.
peace /ˈpiːs/ [ˈpiːs] There was not much peace to be found in the middle of town.
pear /peər/ [peər] The yellow pear fell on the floor.
peas /piːz/ [piːz] Many children don’t like to eat peas.
pen /pen/ [pen] This pen wasn’t expensive.
pencil /ˈpɛnsl/ [ˈpɛnsl] Please sharpen my pencil.
pencil-box | I bought this pencil-box in that shop. ฉันไปซื้อกล่องเครื่องเขียนที่ร้านนั้น.
penfriend /'penfrend/ | I have a penfriend in New Zealand.
people /'piːpl/ | I like to be with other people. ฉันชอบอยู่กับคนอื่นๆ.
percent /ˈpɜːsent/ | What percent of students graduate from this school? ร้อยละของนักเรียนในโรงเรียนนี้ปีนี้มีกี่ร้อยละที่สำเร็จการศึกษา?
perfect /ˈpɜːfekt/ | 1 That is a perfect answer to that question. นี่เป็นคำตอบที่ถูกต้องที่สุดที่คุณสามารถมีได้.
2 Over time I hope to perfect my singing style. ในเวลาที่ผ่านมา ฉันหวังจะทำให้เสียงร้องของฉันเป็นที่สุด.
perhaps /pəˈhæps; præps/ | Perhaps it would be better if I didn't come tomorrow. ฉันก็อาจจะมาได้ดี.
period /ˈpiəriəd/ | 1 ฯลฯ 2 ฯลฯ | 1 Always put a period at the end of a sentence. ต้องมีจุดสิ้นสุดในประโยคทุกครั้ง.
permanent /ˈpɜːmənənt/ | ง่ายต่อการเปลี่ยนแปลง | They decided to make a permanent change in the school rules. พวกเขาตัดสินใจทำให้กฎระเบียบของโรงเรียนเป็นถาวร.
permit /ˈpɜːmit/ | 1 ฯลฯ 2 ฯลฯ | 1 You need to get a permit to build that building. คุณต้องขออนุญาตในการก่อสร้าง.
2 Please permit me to miss class tomorrow because I need to go to the hospital to see my sick father. คุณจะให้ฉันข้ามเรียนวันนี้ได้ไหม ฉันต้องไปรักษาพ่อกิ๊ด.
person /ˈpɜːsn/ | ง่ายต่อการที่จะทำให้เกิดขึ้น | What person would want to go out in a storm like this? ใครกันที่จะออกไปในพายุอย่างนี้.
phone /faʊn/ | ง่ายต่อการโทรศัพท์ | 1 Please phone me. ติดต่อกับฉันได้ไหม? 2 Does your family have a phone? ครอบครัวของคุณมีโทรศัพท์อยู่ไหม?
photo /ˈfəʊtəʊ/ | ง่ายต่อการถ่ายภาพ | This photo was taken in Ziling. รูปถ่ายนี้ถ่ายที่ Ziling.
physics /ˈfɪzɪks/ | ง่ายต่อการศึกษา | Physics is the study of the laws of motion. ฟิสิกส์คือการศึกษาของกฏการเคลื่อนที่.
piano /piəˈneɪəʊ/ | ง่ายต่อการร้อง | She played the piano beautifully. นักร้องอิเล็กทรอนิกส์นั้นเล่นเปียโนได้ดี.
pick /pɪk/ | ง่ายต่อการเก็บ | 1 I used a pick to dig through the stony earth. ฉันใช้หินในการบดดินทราย.
2 Don’t pick at your whiskers. จงยุติการขัดข้อง.
3 I will pick apples this afternoon. ฉันจะรดน้ำแต่ละนี้ในตอนเที่ยง


We went to the mountain for a picnic. I don’t like to picnic where there is a lot of garbage.

This picture was painted one hundred years ago. Whenever I feel nervous and upset I try to picture a quiet forest scene.

I want a small piece of cake. After asking many questions we were able to piece together what had happened.

The pilot flies the aeroplane. I will only feel safe if you pilot our aeroplane.

My brother plays ping-pong very well.

The American pioneers were constantly moving west.

We buried a pipe so that the town could have fresh water. They plan to pipe water to every home.

I once read a story about a pirate and a ship.

This is a nice place to live.

Beijing is a place of interest to all Chinese.

What is the plan for the party next week? Let’s now plan our party for this weekend.

The plane landed with a bump.

Each planet has its own orbit.

Some people like to grow plants in their houses. Soon it will be time to plant the rice seedlings.
plate /plɛt/ | I broke a plate when I was washing dishes.

play /pleɪ/ | I like to play with my baby brother.

player /ˈplɛər/ | He is a good volleyball player.

please /pliːz/ | It will please my mother if I study well.

pleased /ˈplɪzd/ | I was pleased with your good study.

pleasure /ˈpleʒər/ | What gives you the most pleasure?

plenty /ˈplentɪ/ | There is plenty of meat here for everyone to eat.

plot /plɒt/ | Can you describe the plot of the film to me?

pocket /ˈpɒkt/ | My pocket has a hole in it.

poem /ˈpəʊəm/ | My teacher taught us how to write poems in class.

point /pɔɪnt/ | A needle has a very sharp point.

poison /ˈpɔɪzn/ | Poison is used to kill weeds and animals.

policy /ˈpɒləsi/ | What is the school policy on being late?
politics /ˈpɒlətɪks/ || You can read about politics in the newspaper.

don't pollute the river with your garbage.

popular /ˈpɒpjʊlər/ || Popular music can be heard everywhere in the city.

poor /pʊər/ || Poor people want to become rich.

possible /ˈpɒsəbl/ || Will it be possible for you to visit me in the future?

post /pəʊst/ || The wooden post was leaned against a tree.

postcard /pəʊstkɑːd/ || I bought a postcard a few minutes ago.

postpone /pəˈspouən/ || The storm caused us to postpone the picnic.

potential /ˈpɒtənʃəl/ || Some cities in the world are very polluted.

potato /pəˈteɪtoʊ/ || My family likes to eat potatoes.
power /ˈpauə/ | น้า | น้า | Lifting weights increases muscle power.

practice /ˈpræktɪs/ | ˈพรักติส์ | ˈพรักติส์ | 1 I practice speaking English everyday. Football practice is this afternoon.

praise /ˈpreɪz/ | ˈพรายซ์ | ˈพรายซ์ | 1 I have only praise for my mother. She will praise the leader if she meets him.

pray /preɪ/ | ˈพราย | The monks pray in the temple daily.

prefecture /ˈpreʃfɪktʃər/ | ˈพรีฟชัฟชัวร์ | My home is in Malho Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture.

pregnant /ˈpreɡnənt/ | ˈพรีแกนต์ | My sister is pregnant with her first baby.

prepare /prəˈpiər/ | ˈพรีเปียร์ | We must prepare a meal for the workers.

present /ˈpreznt/ | ˈพรีเซนต์ | 1 Don’t buy me a present for my birthday. Who is not present in our class today?

because you are a new teacher, I will present you to the students at this morning’s school meeting.

president /ˈprezɪdənt/ | ˈพรีซิดันต์ | Do you know the name of the President of the United States?

press /pres/ | ˈพรีส | 1 The dry cleaners will press your shirt for you. Press this button and the light will go on.

pressure /ˈpreʃər/ | ˈพรีเชียร์ | The tires will be flat if they don't have enough air pressure in them.

prevent /prɪˈvent/ | ˈพรีเวนต์ | Keeping warm is a good way to prevent a cold.

price /ˈpraɪs/ | ˈพรายซ์ | 1 What is the price of that bread? I will price new computers this afternoon and then decide if I can afford one.
prison /ˈprɪzn/ | অভিজ্ঞ | The guards stood outside the prison gate.

private /ˈprɪvət/ | ব্যক্তিগত | My brother wants to start his own private business.

prize /ˈpraɪz/ | পুরস্কার | If we study hard we may get a prize for knowing the most words.

probably /ˈprɑbəli/ | স্বাভাবিক | I will probably buy a new shirt next year.

problem /ˈprɒbləm/ | সমস্যা | Learning English without a book is a problem.

produce /ˈprədʒuːs/ | উৎপাদন | 1 Did you see a lot of fresh produce at the market? 2 How many new cars can your factory produce in one year?

professor /ˈprəfesər/ | প্রফেসর | I want to be a history professor after I graduate from school.

programme (program) /ˈprəʊɡræm/ | প্রোগ্রাম | I heard there is a good television programme on tonight.

progress /ˈprəʊgres/ | গতি | The teacher was pleased with the students’ progress.

project /ˈprɒdʒekt/ | প্রকল্প | 1 The town leader asked if the people were interested in the road building project. 2 Can you project what this city may look like ten years from now?

promise /ˈprɔmɪs/ | ভাবনা | 1 You broke your promise so I don’t believe you any more. 2 He promised to love her forever.

propaganda /ˌprɒpəˈɡændə/ | প্রচারমাফিয়া | The speaker was discussing the benefits of propaganda.

property /ˈprɒpəti/ | স্বত্ব | Who owns that property by the river?

propose /ˈprəʊpəuz/ | প্রস্তাব | The governor proposed to build four new schools next year.
protection /praˈtekJn/ | Yaks have thick hair for protection from the cold.  

protest /ˈprɔtest/ | No one wanted to protest against the teacher’s ideas.  

proud /prəoud/ | The parents were very proud when their daughter graduated from school.  

prove /pru:v/ | Can you prove he took the money?  

provide /prəˈvaId/ | The father wanted to provide the best opportunities for his children.  

public /ˈpʌblIk/ | Finally, after many years, they made the secret documents available to the public.  

publish /ˈpʌblIS/ | She hopes to get a book of her poems published next year.  

pull /pʊl/ | I don’t have much pull with the leaders any more.  

pump /pʌmp/ | The water pump is broken so the car won’t work.  

punish /ˈpʌnIS/ | The teacher knew she had to punish the naughty young boy.  

purchase /ˈpɜːtʃəs/ | I would like to purchase a new car someday.  

pure /pjʊə/ | The butter tasted so fresh and pure.  

purpose /ˈpɜːpəs/ | Learning is a life-long purpose.  

push /pʊʃ/ | I’m grateful for the push my teacher gave me many years ago.  

put away |  Putting away your books and papers.
put on |  Putting on your cap now.
put /put/ |  Putting this book on the table.
puzzle /pəzəl/ |  I could not solve the puzzle after several hours of trying.
Q
Qinghai Province /ˈprɒvɪns/ |  Qinghai Province is in Northwest China.
quarter /ˈkwɔːtər/ |  A quarter of my study time I spend learning Chinese.
question /ˈkwɛʃən/ |  Please ask me a question.
queue /kjuː/ |  Men wore queues during the Qing Dynasty.
quick /kwɪk/ |  Please be quick.
quickly /ˈkwɪkli/ |  We walked quickly to the classroom.
quiet /ˈkwaɪət/ |  I like to listen to quiet music.
quite /kwɪt/ |  He is quite quiet in the evenings.
R
race /reis/ |  Let's go to the horse race at the festival.
radiation /ˈreɪdiəʃən/ |  Radiation from the sun can be harmful.
radio /ˈreɪdiəʊ/ |  I don’t own a radio.
railroad /ˈreɪlroʊd/ |  The railroad runs past our house.
rain /rem/ |  When will the rain stop?
raining /ˈreɪniŋ/ |  It was raining all this morning.
rainy /ˈreɪni/ |  I don’t like rainy weather but the farmers do.
The people in that village raise a lot of chickens.

My older brother and his wife raised me.

I asked the students to raise their hands if they knew the answer to the question.

The water in the river rose rapidly after the storm.

The doctor didn't know how to cure the rare disease.

The rate of growth for the town was steady after they finished the new road.

The mother didn't react to the news about the accident at first.

Please read this text.

Are you ready to go?

He is a real person.

Do you think his wanting to become president is realistic?

Do you really want to come with me?

What are your reasons for studying English?

It is not reasonable for me to buy a new car at this time.

He has always been a rebel against every established and accepted idea.

The younger students were rebelling against the teachers’ authority.

Did you receive any mail today?

The recent developments caused a delay in plans.
A failing economy is called a recession.

I didn't recognise her after she got her hair cut.

The temperature today is a record high.

This old record player was made about thirty years ago.

This summer I want to record as many folk songs as I can.

Blood is red.

The traffic light helps reduce accidents on that corner.

The government wants to reform labour laws.

Our family's refrigerator is in our kitchen.

There are many refugees from war in the world.

He refused to tell the police where his friends had gone.

It's important to maintain good relations between countries.

They decided to release a new model car.

Religion is practised by monks and lamas in the temple.
remain /rɪˈmɛn/ | रिमेन || Do you want to remain in this village for more than one year? रिमेन वडाला राखिन्छ या गाउँमा?

remember /rɪˈmɛmbər/ | रिमेबर || Do you remember what you said yesterday? रिमेबर ग्यानमा भनेर ग्यान हुँदा?

remove /rɪˈmuːv/ | रिम्युव || The workers had to remove the broken glass from the window. रिम्युव उक्त वर्गामा गोल छालमा बदूँगरहुनुहोस्।

repair /rɪˈpeər/ | 1.रिपेर 2.रिपेर || 1. Where is a shop that does electronic appliance repair? रिपेर एक दुकान रहेको धेरी इलेक्ट्रॉनिक आप्लाईकेस रिपायर?
2. Do you know anyone who can repair my bicycle? रिपेर नेपाल किसी चीताँद्रो भन्ने मात्र धेरी बाइस्कल रिपायर?

repeat /rɪˈpiːt/ | रिपीट || Please repeat the question. रिपीट दृष्टिकोण गर्नुहोस्।

report /rɪˈpɔːrt/ | 1.रिपोर्ट 2.रिपोर्ट || 1. Please report what you saw and did. रिपोर्ट ग्यानमा भनेर ग्यान गरी ग्यान गरेको。
2. He made a very good report on his study. रिपोर्ट त्यसको निदेश रिपोर्ट गरेको।

repress /rɪˈpreʃ/ | रिप्रेश || Some people like to repress others’ ideas. रिप्रेश भन्ने लोकले रहेको रहेको त्यसको अर्थ रोक्ने प्रयास गर्दैन।

request /rɪˈkwɛst/ | 1.रिक्वेस्ट 2.रिक्वेस्ट || 1. Your latest request is unreasonable. रिक्वेस्ट मात्रमा भन्ने रिक्वेस्ट असह्य रहेको।
2. Can we request more food if we are hungry? रिक्वेस्ट धेर खानी भन्ने मात्र धेर खानी अगाडि?

rescue /rɪˈskjuː/ | रिस्क्यु || They hoped to rescue all the climbers from the mountain storm. रिस्क्यु त्यसको निदेश रिस्क्यु गन्तव्य रहेको।

resign /rɪˈzɑːn/ | रिझोन || The general was asked to resign from his post. रिझोन धेरी भन्ने रिझोन गराउन ती जुन भनेर?

resolution /rɪˈzəʊʃən/ | रिजोशन || Every year I make a resolution never to smoke again. रिजोशन त्यसमा भन्ने त्यसको निदेश रिजोशन गन्तव्य रहेको।

responsible /rɪˈspɒnsəbl/ | रिस्पोन्सिबल || The mother behaved in a responsible manner with her children. रिस्पोन्सिबल त्यसको निदेश रिस्पोन्सिबल निदेश रिस्पोन्सिबल?

rest /rest/ | 1.रेस्ट 2.रेस्ट || 1. Our rest period will be over soon. रेस्ट नेपाल भन्ने भन्ने रेस्ट गाउँहुन्छ।
2. Let’s rest for ten minutes. लेट्स रेस्ट गाउँहुँनु १० मिनट।

restrain /rɪˈstreɪn/ | रिस्ट्रेイン || The man was so angry that his friends had to restrain him from starting a fight. रिस्ट्रेイン त्यसको निदेश त्यसको निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रेイン निदेश रिस्ट्रे
Your wrongdoing will result in your being punished. 

That worker is surely old enough to retire.

We will eagerly await your return.

That kind of talk could start a revolt.

Rice is an important food for Chinese people.

She’s rich, not poor.

The ride in the old bus was unpleasant for everyone.

My mother likes her wedding ring very much.

The crowd became so angry I thought they would start a riot.

The workers will riot if the factory leaders don’t meet with them.

The sun rises every morning in the east.

The Mekong River begins in Yulshul Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture.

The road to the airport is very rough.

Has anyone ever robbed your home?

There are many big rocks on the mountainside.

Don’t rock the boat or it will turn over.

A rocket flies in the air, high into the sky.
roll /rəʊl/ | S| It's easier to carry if you roll up the blanket.

room /ruːm; rʊm/ | 1sæl/| 2| This room is where I sleep.

root /ruːt/ | ræt/| Laziness is the root of many problems. The roots of that tree are very big.

rough /rʌf/ | ru:| His hands were rough from years of hard work outside.

round /raʊnd/ | ruː| The moon is round tonight.

castles

row /rəʊ/ | 1| Which row do you sit in? 2| I'm tired so can you row the boat for a while?

rubber /rʌbə/ | ru:| The rubber on that old tire is very thin.

ruin /ruːn/ | 1| Standing in the cold weather without a good jacket can ruin your health. 2| The castle ruin is situated near a mountain pass.

rule /ruːl/ | ruː| What are the rules of the school?

run /rʌn/ | ruː| Don’t run, walk.

sad /sæd/ | sæd/| Don’t be sad, be glad.

safe /seft/ | seif/| We are safe here.

sail /seɪl/ | sål/| The boat’s sail is made of strong white cloth. Have you ever been sailing in a boat?

salt /sɔːlt/ | sɔː| I don’t like salt in my milk tea.

same /seɪm/ | sem| "Big" and "large" have the same meaning.

satellite /ˈseɪtələt/ | sætələt/| There are many satellites in the sky orbiting the earth.
satisfy /'sætɪsfɑː/ | ˈsatisfactory || Even that delicious meal didn't satisfy him.

Saturday /ˈsætədər; -di/ | ˈsábado || I will wash my clothes this Saturday.

say /seɪ/ | ʃeɪ || What did you say? ʃəʊˈliːʃənality

school /ˈskuːl/ | ˈskool || I walk to school every morning. ʃəʊˈliːʃənality

science /ˈsaɪəns/ | ˈsɛɪəns || Science helps us understand the weather.

score /skɔː/ | ˈskɔː || What was your score on the examination? ʃəʊˈliːʃənality

scream /skriːm/ | ˈsk्र Wordpress || Don't scream. I can hear you. ʃəʊˈliːʃənality

sea /siː/ | ʃiː || The lake seemed as large as a sea. ʃəʊˈliːʃənality

search /sɜːtʃ/ | ˈsɜːtʃ || We spent hours searching for the lost boy in the forest.

season /ˈsiːzn/ | ˈsɛɪzən || 1Which season of the year is your favourite?

seat /siːt/ | ʃiːt || Would you please give your seat to the old person on the bus?

second /ˈsekənd/ | ˈsɛkənd || 1I’m the second oldest child in my family.

secret /ˈsiːkrɛt/ | ˈsɛktər || I’ll tell you because it’s not a secret. ʃəʊˈliːʃənality

security /ˈsɪkjʊərəti/ | ˈsɪkjʊərəti || For security purposes I'm going to lock the door.

see /siː/ | ʃiː || I can’t see the blackboard. ʃəʊˈliːʃənality

seek /siːk/ | ʃiːk || She went out to seek a way to earn a living.

seem /siːm/ | ʃiːm || He doesn't seem to want to go to school today.

seize /siːz/ | ʃiːz || He thought it best to seize the opportunity to get a job.

self /siːl/ | ʃiːl || Psychology is the study of the self and others.
sell /sel/ | সালাম || Do you want to sell that sheep? মনে আসছে তুমি তো তার দুষ্পালক
send /send/ | পাকান || Was it you who sent me the flowers? যে কোন কারণেই তুমি ঠিক নির্দেশ নির্দেশ
sense /sens/ | স্বাভাবিক || That film doesn't make any sense to me.
sentence /sentəns/ | বাক্য || This sentence is not correct.
separate /seprət/ | কাজ || They decided to live separately from each other.
September /sepˈtemba/ | সেপ্টেম্বর || September follows August.
series /ˈsɛriəz/ | সিরিয়াল || Did you watch the soccer series on TV last year?
serious /ˈsɛriəs/ | জটিল || He was the most serious student in the class.
sermon /ˈsɜːmən/ | প্রধান || The minister gave a sermon every Sunday in church.
serve /sərv/ | প্রদান || The daughters were happy to serve their mother tea.
settle /ˈsetl/ | সমাধান || Will you please help settle this argument?
seven /ˈsevn/ | সাত || Seven people came to visit us.
several /ˈsevrəl/ | কয়েক || I will be gone for several days.
severe /ˈsevrəl/ | অস্তিত্ব || The snowstorm was very severe in Chabmdo last winter.
sex /səks/ | পুরুষ || 1 আকাশের লতার আকাশের লতা
| 2 তাত্ত্বিক || 'My sex is female. 1 আকাশের লতার 2 তাত্ত্বিক || She wanted to have sex with him but he didn’t want to have sex with her.
shake /ʃeik/ | শব্দ || She was so cold that she was shaking.
shape /ʃeip/ | আকার || The shape of the moon is round.
share /ʃeər/ | শাশ্রয় || 1 Your share of the food is less than my share.
| 2 শাশ্রয় || Can you share your book with me?
sharp /ʃɑːp/ | শর্ব || The tip of a needle is very sharp.
she /ʃi:/ | স্ত্রী || She doesn’t want to come.
shine /ʃaɪn/ || The sun will shine today.

ship /ʃɪp/ || 1. The ship was lost at sea. 2. We will ship the books that you bought to your home address.

shirt /ʃɜːt/ || I like my brother’s shirt.

shoe /ʃu:/ || That shoe is black.

shoot /ʃuːt/ || 1. Don’t shoot that gun near me. 2. The film director wanted to start shooting the film tomorrow.

shop /ʃɔp/ || 1. The shop is closed. 2. I like to shop for new clothes in spring.

shopping /ʃɒpɪŋ/ || Let’s go shopping.

short /ʃɔt/ || My brother is short.

shout /ʃɔut/ || 1. Don’t shout, I can hear you. 2. Her shout was not very loud.

show /ʃɔʊ/ || 1. Please show me your stamp collection. 2. What time does the show start?

shrink /ʃrɪŋk/ || Sometimes clothes shrink after they are washed.

shut /ʃʌt/ || Please don’t shut the door.

sick /sɪk/ || 1. Nurses and doctors help sick people in the hospital. 2. She got very sick and died two days later.

side /saɪd/ || I live on this side of the river.

sigh /saɪ/ || 1. I sigh when I’m tried and bored. 2. The girl was so sad that she heaved a deep sigh.

sign /saɪn/ || The villagers decided to put a sign at the intersection.

signal /ˈsaɪɡnəl/ || 1. A red light is a signal to stop. 2. Please signal with your hands if you want us to come and help you.
silence /ˈsʌləns/ | সালান্স || At night in the grassland there is nothing to hear but silence. সালান্স যখন ঘাস পাড়িতে থাকলে আর কিছু শুনতে হয় না।
silver /ˈsɪlvər/ | সালভার || She looks so pretty with all her silver necklaces.
 | সালভা সিংহ তার সব সালবারের মুড়িলেটে মন্দ জলান
similar /ˈsɪmlər/ | সামিলার || "Tall" and "long" have similar meanings.
 | "সামিলা" এবং "লং" এর সাম্য কিছুই নেই।
simple /ˈsɪmpl/ | সাম্পল || I can understand simple English.
 | সাম্পল ইংরেজিতে সহজ বোঝতে পারি।
since /səns/ | সানস || I haven't seen her since last year. 
 | সানস আমি সে চার বছর পর তাকে দেখেনি।
sing /sɪŋ/ | সিঙ্গ || Please sing this song.
 | প্লিজ সিঙ এই গানঃ
sir /sɜː/ | সার || Sir, I do know the answer.
 | সার আমি সেটি জানি।
sister /ˈsɪstər/ | সিস্টার || My sister is seven years old.
 | সিস্টার আমার ভাইয়ের বয়স সাত বছর।
sit down /sɪt daʊn/ | সাইট দাউন || Please sit down.
 | প্লিজ সাইট দাউন
sit /sɪt/ | সাইট || Please sit on that chair.
 | প্লিজ সাইট অন এই চেয়ারে
situation /ˈsɪtʃuərən/ | সিটচুয়ার || They have improved their living situation.
 | সিটচুয়ার তাদের জীবনের অবস্থা সাফল্য পেয়েছে।
six /sɪks/ | সাইক্স || I have six pencils.
 | সাইক্স আমি দুই চেয়ারের বছর থাকি।
size /szaɪz/ | সাইজ || What size are your shoes?
 | সাইজ তুমি কত সাইজের শুল্ক পরা যাচ্ছে?
skate /sket/ | স্কেট || I learned how to skate last winter.
 | স্কেট আমি হয়ে দুই শেত আগে শাক শাক শেত করেছি।
skeleton /ˈskeɪltən/ | সেল্টার || If you want to become a doctor, you must study a skeleton.
 | সেল্টার যদি একজন ডক্টর হতে চান তবে অবশ্য স্কেলটন অধ্যয়ন করতে হবে।
skill /skɪl/ | স্কিল || Being a surgeon requires great skill.
 | স্কিল যদি একজন সার্গান হতে চান তবে বিশেষ জ্ঞান প্রয়োজন।
skin /skɪn/ | স্কাইন || That young lady has such lovely smooth skin.
 | স্কাইন তার যুব মহিলা দেহের কিছু দেখতে ভাল উপায়।
skirt /skɜːt/ | স্কার্ট || My skirt is new.
 | স্কার্ট আমার স্কার্ট নতুন।
skull /skʌl/ | স্কাল || He fell down and cracked open his skull.
 | স্কাল তিনি হেঁটে পড়ে এবং হেঁটে পড়ে তার সকেল
sky /skai/ | স্কেই || The sky is blue today.
 | স্কেই তাদের সাক্ষাত পারে।
sleep /slɛp/ | স্লেপ || 1 I didn't get enough sleep last night.
 | স্লেপ আমি শুধু এক সাল শুয়ে না। 2 It’s late so let’s sleep.
 | স্লেপ এটি বেল তাতে স্লেপ নিয়ে আমি।
slow /sləʊ/ | স্লো || Don’t be slow to answer my questions.
 | স্লো আমি প্রশ্ন উত্তর দিতে বেইল না।
slowly /sləʊli/ | She was tired and slowly walked home.  
small /smɔːl/ | He is a small man.  
smash /smæʃ/ | She was so angry that she smashed the pot.  
smell /smel/ | Please smell this cake. I don’t like that smell.  
smile /smel/ | They greeted her with big smiles.  
smooth /smuːð/ | Her hair is black, long, and smooth.  
smoke /sməʊk/ | My mother doesn't like it if I smoke.  
snow /snoʊ/ | It will snow tomorrow.  
some /sʌm/ | Do you want some paper?  
somebody /ˈsʌmboʊdi/ | Does somebody here speak English?  
something /ˈsʌmtʃɪŋ/ | I heard something about that recently.
sometimes /samtaɪm/ | Sometimes I listen to music.

son /sɒn/ | He is my son.

soon /sʊn/ | Soon we will go home.

sorry /ˈsɒri/ | I’m sorry I made you angry.

sound /saʊnd/ | That tractor is making a very loud sound.

south /sauθ/ | Sichuan is south of Gansu.

southeast /sauˈθiːst/ | A tall mountain is southeast of our village.

southwest /sauˈθwest/ | Tibet is in Southwest China.

space /spɛs/ | Many people are interested in space travel.

spend /spend/ | How much money do you spend every month on food?

spirit /ˈspɪrɪt/ | The happy children are in high spirits.

split /splɪt/ | They split the money they won in the contest.

sport /spɔːt/ | What is your favourite sport?

spring /sprɪŋ/ | Many kinds of plants bloom in spring.

spy /spaɪ/ | The villagers thought the strange man was a spy.
stamp /stæmp/ 1. to put a stamp on the letter 2. I won’t stamp your document with an official seal until our leader signs it.

stand /stænd/ 1. I don’t agree with your stand on that question. 2. The students need to stand when they answer a question.

star /stɑːr/ 1. There are many stars in the night sky. 2. She was a famous movie star when she was younger. 3. I’m going to star in a new movie.

start /stɑːt/ 1. He wanted to get off to a good start in his new job. 2. Let’s start our class now.

starve /stɑːv/ Without food people starve.

station /ˈsteɪʃn/ 1. The nearest petrol station is far away. 2. The army will station one hundred soldiers at the new military outpost.

statue /ˈstætjuː/ There is a statue of a man in the front of the school.

stay /steɪ/ 1. We enjoyed his stay at our home. 2. I want to stay with you.

steal /stiːl/ He said he didn’t steal anything from the store.

steel /stiːl/ The building is made out of steel and concrete.

step /step/ 1. The children sat on the steps outside the school.

still /stɪl/ It was late and she still hadn’t returned home.

stomach /ˈstʌmək/ His stomach was full after eating a big dinner.

stone /ˈstɑːn/ The statue is made of stone.

stop /stɒp/ Don’t stop running, we are almost there.
store /stoːr/  
1. Can you buy me some milk from the store?  
store /stʊr/  
2. Please store these boxes in your home.

storm /stɔːrm/  
The crops were destroyed by the storm yesterday.

story /ˈstɔːri/  
Tell me a ghost story.

stove /stəʊv/  
The kettle of tea is on the stove.

straight /streɪt/  
Can you draw a straight line?

strange /streɪndʒ/  
No one knew the strange man.

street /streɪt/  
I walked down the street yesterday.

strike /strɪk/  
The workers' strike lasted two weeks.

strong /strɒŋ/  
My father is very strong.

strongly /strɒŋli/  
The house smelled strongly of incense.

struggle /strəɡ/  
The peasants' struggle against the corrupt government soon grew into a nationwide revolution.

stubborn /stʌbən/  
She was very stubborn and didn't want to study her lessons.

student /ˈstjuːdnt/  
I am a student.

study /ˈstʌdi/  
His English study is something that he enjoys.

stupid /ˈstjuːpid/  
Spending all the money is a stupid thing.

substitute /ˈsəbстɪtjuːt/  
If our teacher is sick, the school sends a substitute to replace her.
succeed /sək'siːd/ || If you try very hard you can succeed at whatever you do.

such /sʌtʃ/ || There is such a strong wind today.
sudden /'sʌdn/ || All of a sudden the house fell down.
suffer /'saːfə/ || The sick people in the hospital are all suffering from some kind of disease.
sugar /'ʃʊɡə/ || I like sugar in my tea.
summer /'sʌmə/ || It is hot in summer.
sun /sʌn/ || The sun felt hot on our backs.
Sunday /'sʌndeɪ/ || I don't go to school on Sunday.
sunny /'sʌni/ || Today is a sunny day.
sunshine /'sʌnʃaɪn/ || The sunshine warmed the cold winter day.
supervise /'suːpəvəɪz/ || The teacher asked the best student to supervise the others while she was gone.
supper /'sʌpə/ || When did you eat supper?
supply /'sʌplɪ/ || We don't have a large supply of books at the school.

support /'səpɔːt/ || The son had to provide support for his mother after his father died.
suppose /'səpəʊz/ || I don't suppose you know his phone number?
suppress /'sʌpres/ || He had to suppress his laughter during the class.
sure /sʊr/ || Are you sure you want to do this?
surplus /sə'plɔs/ || There is a surplus of barley this year.
surprise /sə'praɪz/ || His surprise was an act—it wasn’t genuine.
surrender /sə'rendər/ || The enemy surrendered after one battle. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
surround /səˈraʊnd/ || There are flowers surrounding the tree. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
survive /səˈvaɪv/ || We weren't sure he would survive his injury. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
suspect /səˈspekt/ || I suspect that he won't be able to finish school. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
suspend /səˈspend/ || The kite hung suspended from its string in the tree. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
swallow /ˈswəʊl/ || His throat was so sore that he couldn't swallow easily. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
sweater /ˈsweɪtər/ || I lost my sweater. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
sweet /swiːt/ || She likes to drink sweet tea. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
swim /swɪm/ || Our swim in the lake lasted one hour. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
sympathy /ˈsɪmpəθi/ || We all had a lot of sympathy for him after his mother died. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
system /ˈsɪstəm/ || Lawyers study the legal system. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4

T

table /ˈteɪbl/ || The teacher’s table is bigger than my table. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
take /teɪk/ || Take my brother with you when you go to the market. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
  Please take this money. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
take care of /teɪk ˈkɛə əv/ || Take care of yourself when you go abroad. ULLET:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
  ٿٿٿٿ

take off /teɪk ˈɒf/ || Please take off your shirt. ELLOW:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
talk /tɔːk/ || 1 The subject of his talk was Tibetan linguistics. ELLOW:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4 2 Don’t talk so much. ELLOW:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
tall /tɔl/ || How tall are you? ELLOW:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
tank /tæŋk/ || The tank was full of water. ELLOW:K4:K3:B1:K5:K4
tape /teip/  1Put some tape on the envelope.  2I need to tape this torn paper.
target /ˈtæɡt/  1The arrow hit the centre of the target.  2Cigarette advertisers target young people.
task /ˈtæsk/  We had many tasks to do.
taste /ˈtest/  1The taste of boiled mutton is good.  2Please taste the soup and tell me if you think that it is salty enough.
tax /teks/  1How much tax do you need to pay this year?  2The city will tax all retail sales beginning next year.
technical /tekˈnɪkl/  He wanted to attend the local technical college.
teeth /tiː/  His teeth are very white.
telephone /ˈteləfən/  1Our family has no telephone.  2Please telephone me this evening.
television (TV, telly) /ˈteləfən/  There was no electricity so we couldn’t watch television.
tell /tel/  Please tell me about yourself.
temperature /ˈtemprətʃər/  What is the temperature now?
temporary /ˈtemprərē/  The building they made was only temporary.
ten /ten/  Here are ten pens.
tense /tens/ | 1She was tense before taking the test.
2They wrote in the past tense.
tent /tent/ | 1Our village has a large tent.
term /t3:m/ | 1I don’t understand some of these new terms and expressions.
2The new term will begin soon.
terrible /ˈterəbl/ | 1That was a terrible storm we had yesterday.
territory /ˈterətri/ | Qinghai has much grassland territory.
terror /ˈterər/ | She felt terror at the thought of giving a speech in front of the class.
test /test/ | We always have a test on Friday.
textile /ˈtekstəIl/ | Cotton and wool are materials used to make textiles.
thank /θæŋk/ | I want to thank him for his help.
Thank goodness! | Thank goodness! I didn’t become ill.
thanks /θæŋks/ | Thanks for your help.
that /ðæt/ | What is that person doing? That’s all right.
the Chinese /tʃərˈniːz/ | The Chinese have a long history.
the day after tomorrow | The day after tomorrow will be a holiday.
the day before yesterday | The day before yesterday I was ill.
the middle of the day | We will eat lunch in the middle of the day.
the next day | On the next day I could not go home.
the next year | The next year I became a student.
the people | The people of our village are all Tibetan.
the Tibetans | The Tibetans have a beautiful and important language.
theatre (theater) /ˈθiətər/ | थिएटर || She wants to become an actress in the theatre.

their /ˈðeər/ | थीयर || This is their classroom. देहीर विद्यालय

teach /ɪtʃ/ | तिच || It is theirs, not ours. दिच किसी देहीर विद्यालय

ten /ten/ | टिन || Please give it to them. दिच किसी देहीर विद्यालय

themselves /ˈðeɪməlz/ | थीमसेल्स || They did it all by themselves. दिच किसी देहीर विद्यालय

then /ðeɪn/ | थन || What will you do then? दिच किसी देहीर विद्यालय

there /ðeər/ | थेर || He lives there with his family. थेर अपनी जिंदगी में अपनी परिवार से रहता है

these /ðiːz/ | थिस || These girls are all good students. थिस लड़कियाँ सबसे अच्छे मान्यता में हैं

they /ðiː/ | थे || They will not give you any trouble. थे आपको कोई तर्क नहीं देंगे

thin /θɪn/ | थ्यिन || The wool on that sheep is very thick. थ्यिन लिए पर ये गोबर कड़ी है

thing /θɪŋ/ | थिंग || I don't have a thing to wear. मैं किसी भी बाजार में नहीं रहता

think /θɪŋk/ | थिंक || I think we must leave now. थिंक वह आगे निकलने की आवश्यकता है

third /θɜːd/ | थर्ड || This is the third time I've told you to stop that. थर्ड इमें वहाँ तौर पर तौर पर जो भी होता है

thirteen /ˈθɜːtɪn/ | थर्टीन || She was thirteen before she went to the big city.

thirty /ˈθɜːti/ | थर्टी || My mother is thirty years old. थर्टी माता 30 वर्षीय है

this /ðɪs/ | थिस || This is a big yak. थिस एक बड़ा गोबर है

those /ðəʊz/ | थोज || Those are an old pair of socks. थोज एक पर्व सच्चे तरीके पर

threat /θret/ | थ्रेट || 1. तुमने कहा कि तुमने मेरे गायब किया है। 2. तुमने कहा कि मेरे गायब किया है। तुम तुमने कहा कि मेरे गायब किया है। तुमने कहा कि मेरे गायब किया है। तुम तुमने कहा कि मेरे गायब किया है। तुम तुमने कहा कि मेरे गायब किया है। तुम तुमने कहा कि मेरे गायब किया है।

three /θriː/ | थ्री || There are three girls in our family. थ्री पर्व सच्चे तरीके पर

through /θroʊ/ | थ्रू || थ्रू || I like watching the horses run through the grass.

Thursday /ˈθɜːzdi,-ˌdi/- | थर्शडी || On Thursday we will have a picnic. थर्शडी के दिन हम एक पिकनिक में रहते हैं

Tibetan /ˈtæbetn/ | तिबेतन || Do you speak Tibetan? तिबेतन भाषा का उच्चारण करते हैं?

ticket /ˈtɪkɪt/ | टिकट || Can you buy me a bus ticket? टिकट खरीदने की विद्यमान भाषा का उच्चारण करते हैं?
tidy /ˈtædɪ/ | She always keeps her room tidy.  


tiger /ˈtaɪɡər/ | Has your ever seen a tiger?  

time /ˈtaɪm/ | What time is our English class?  


tired /ˈtɛəd/ | He was tired after studying for many hours.  

to /toʊ/ | I’m going to go to the market.  

today /ˈtədeɪ/ | Today I want to tell you all a story.  


together /ˈtərədə/ | We ate a delicious dinner together.  

toilet /ˈtɔːlɪt/ | The toilet stopped working last night.  

tomorrow /ˈtəmərəʊ/ | Tomorrow I’m leaving on a long trip.  


tonight /ˈtənɪt/ | Tonight he thought it would rain.  

too /tuː/ | Do you want to read a book, too?  

tool /tuːl/ | A hammer is a useful tool.  

tooth /tuːθ/ | The baby is growing a new tooth.  


top /tɔp/ | Put the book on top of the table.  


torture /ˈtɔːtʃər/ | Trying to read a book in the dark is torture for the eyes.  


total /ˈtɔːtl/ | Can you total these numbers for me?  


touch /tʌtʃ/ | He was so fat that he couldn't touch his toes.  

toward /təˈwɔːrdz/ | We walked toward the village.  

town /ˈtaʊn/ | Are you going to town today?  

township /ˈtaʊntʃɪp/ | My home is in Maba Township.  


trade /træd/ | The computer trade in China is growing.  


Do you think he will trade this blanket for some food?  


tradition /trəˈdɪʃən/ | Singing loudly is a tradition in this area.  


traffic jam /ˈtræfɪk dʒeɪm/ || There was a traffic jam so I’m late.

traffic /ˈtræfɪk/ || 1Late at night there is little traffic.

tragic /ˈtrædʒɪk/ || The death of the two boys was tragic.

train /trem/ || I have never been on a train.

traitor /ˈtretər/ || The police arrested the woman for being a traitor.

transport /trænspɔːt/ || That big truck is used to transport goods to the market.

travel /ˈtrævl/ || 1Travel by ship is slower than travel by plane.

treasure /ˈtreʒər/ || They hoped to find a treasure in the cave.

treat /triːt/ || 1I’ll treat you to a nice meal at noon in a restaurant.

treasure /ˈtreʒər/ || They hoped to find a treasure in the cave.

try /trɪː/ || 1I hope we don't have any trouble on the way.

trousers /ˈtraʊzərz/ || I’ve bought some new trousers.

truce /truːs/ || The armies declared a truce.

true /truː/ || I swear it is a true story.
The trust that I have in your ability explains why I am promoting you. I'm not sure that person can be trusted.

Although it was a good try it was unsuccessful. She will try to come to see you in the hospital.

I'm not sure that person can be trusted.

Although it was a good try it was unsuccessful. She will try to come to see you in the hospital.

I'll see you next Tuesday.

Please turn off the radio.

I don't like to watch TV.

I'm twelve years old.

There are twenty students in my class.

My oldest brother is twenty one.

My twin is now a doctor.

Two boys ran across the road.

His uncle is a teacher.

The dog ran under the house.

Do you understand?

The scientists study the elements in the universe.

We should all unite for equal rights.

The scientists study the elements in the universe.

We should all unite for equal rights.

I won't see you again until tomorrow.

United States of America (US, USA) My English teacher is from the USA.
unusual /ənˈjuːsəl/ | ificates || That is an unusual rock.
up /ʌp/ | ʌp` / | Let’s go up the mountain.
up and down | ʌp` / | His hand moved up and down.
urgent /əˈʒʊrənt/ | ʌrˈʒʊrənt || This is an urgent message for your teacher.
us /ʌs/ | ʌs || Please tell us the answer.
use /juːz/ | juːz || Please use my pencil.
usual /juːˈʒuəl/ | ʃuəl || As usual the road gets muddy after it rains.
usually /ˈjuːʒuəli/ | ʃuəli || I usually have bread for breakfast.

V

valley /ˈvæli/ | ˈvæli || There is a large valley between those two mountains.
value /ˈvælju/ | ˈvælju || With inflation the value of money is reduced.
vegetable /ˈvedʒtəbl/ | ˈvedʒtəbl || This vegetable is my favourite.
vehicle /ˈviːkl/ | ˈviːkl || Have you seen our new vehicle on the road?
version /ˈvɜːʒn/ | ˈvɜːʒn || This is the best version of the poem I've ever read.
very much | ˈvɛri ˈmʌtʃ || I don’t like to eat beef very much.
very /ˈveri/ | ˈveri || She is very tall.
veto /ˈvɛtəʊ/ | ˈvɛtəʊ || The President chose to veto the new law.
vicious /ˈvɪʃəs/ | ˈvɪʃəs || That is a vicious dog barking over there.
victory /ˈvɪktəri/ | ˈvɪktəri || The players were celebrating their recent victory.
village /ˈvɪlɪdʒ/ | ˈvɪlɪdʒ || My village is behind the mountain.
virus /ˈvɜːrəs/ | ˈvɜːrəs || The virus was spread through water.

299
My mother left for her own home yesterday after a three-day visit to my home. When will you visit me?

The visitor left after two hours.

Her voice sounded strange on the phone.

There are volcanoes erupting in Hawaii.

The new volleyball was expensive.

How many votes did each candidate receive?

At what age do you get to vote in the election?

My mother arrived after a long voyage over the ocean.

He hopes improving his education level will increase his wages.

Please wait for me by the school.

Please wake me up early tomorrow morning.

After a long walk in the mountains I felt much better.

I’ll walk to your home this evening.

The wall is made of bricks.

Do you want any tea?

Many people die in war.

Today is warm.

I’ll wash the dishes later.

Don’t waste your time playing sports all the time.
I lost my new watch. Please watch my children while I go to town.

I water the yaks and sheep in the evening.

I lost my new watch.

Please watch my children while I go to town.

I water the yaks and sheep in the evening.

I water the yaks and sheep in the evening.

I can recognize his wave from far away.

She liked to stand in the waves at the ocean.

He waved goodbye when he left.

I prefer weak tea over strong tea.

There is a great deal of wealth in that part of town.

The rebels hid their weapons near the forest.

I’ll wear my new hat tonight.

The weather is nice today.

The party is on Wednesday.

One week from today is her birthday.

Monday is a weekday.

Saturday and Sunday are the weekend.

Welcome to my home!

My home is west of here.

My shirt is wet from the rain.

What did you learn in class today?

What about next week?

China grows a lot of wheat.
wheel /wiːl/ | The wheel was invented a long time ago. व्हिल टायर नई अनी एक लाख वर्ष पुराना।

when /wen/ | कब? कब? । When she left she was sad. जब वह चली गई तब उसे मुससार हो गया।

where /weər/ | कहाँ? कहाँ? । Where are you going? आप बढ़ रहे हैं?

Those women are Tibetan. "I wonder what they will be doing next week?"

Can you help me collect some wood? I wonder what they will be doing next week?

My father is a worker. I'd rather live here than anywhere else in the whole world.

I'm worried about your study. Don't worry! He is the worst student in the class.

She got a serious wound when she fell off her horse.

Will you write a letter to me very soon?

What's wrong with your sister?

I had an x-ray yesterday.

In what year were your born?

Butter is yellow.

Yes, I am Tibetan.

I forgot what I said yesterday.
yesterday evening /ˈjestədi/ | अंततःकु न से | Yesterday evening I went to visit my uncle. अंततःकु न से सही कु न से कृ ण कु न से
yet /jet/ | जैसा || I haven’t been to class yet. जैसा कु न से है कु न से
you /jʊ/ | जैसा || Do you want to learn English? जैसा जैसा से कु न से कृ ण कृ ण
young /jʌŋ/ | जैसा कु न से || I’m not young anymore. जैसा कु न से||
your /jʊə/ | जैसा || Your dress is beautiful. जैसा जैसा से कु न से कृ ण कृ ण
yours /jʊəz/ | जैसा || Is this book yours? जैसा जैसा से कु न से कृ ण कृ ण
yourself /ˈjʊərself; jəˈself/ | जैसा || Did you paint this picture by yourself? जैसा जैसा से कु न से कृ ण कृ ण

Z

zero /ˈzɪərəʊ/ | जैसा || Zero is a number. जैसा जैसा से कु न से कृ ण कृ ण